

# GLOBAL JOURNAL

OF MEDICAL RESEARCH: F

## Diseases

Thyroid Dysfunction

Lipid Profile Alterations

**Highlights**

The Metabolic Syndrome

Prevalence of Cervical Cancer

Discovering Thoughts, Inventing Future

VOLUME 15

ISSUE 3

VERSION 1.0



GLOBAL JOURNAL OF MEDICAL RESEARCH: F  
DISEASES

---



GLOBAL JOURNAL OF MEDICAL RESEARCH: F  
DISEASES

VOLUME 15 ISSUE 3 (VER. 1.0)

OPEN ASSOCIATION OF RESEARCH SOCIETY

© Global Journal of Medical Research . 2015.

All rights reserved.

This is a special issue published in version 1.0 of "Global Journal of Medical Research." By Global Journals Inc.

All articles are open access articles distributed under "Global Journal of Medical Research"

Reading License, which permits restricted use. Entire contents are copyright by of "Global Journal of Medical Research" unless otherwise noted on specific articles.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without written permission.

The opinions and statements made in this book are those of the authors concerned. Ultraculture has not verified and neither confirms nor denies any of the foregoing and no warranty or fitness is implied.

Engage with the contents herein at your own risk.

The use of this journal, and the terms and conditions for our providing information, is governed by our Disclaimer, Terms and Conditions and Privacy Policy given on our website <http://globaljournals.us/terms-and-condition/menu-id-1463/>

By referring / using / reading / any type of association / referencing this journal, this signifies and you acknowledge that you have read them and that you accept and will be bound by the terms thereof.

All information, journals, this journal, activities undertaken, materials, services and our website, terms and conditions, privacy policy, and this journal is subject to change anytime without any prior notice.

Incorporation No.: 0423089  
License No.: 42125/022010/1186  
Registration No.: 430374  
Import-Export Code: 1109007027  
Employer Identification Number (EIN):  
USA Tax ID: 98-0673427

## Global Journals Inc.

(A Delaware USA Incorporation with "Good Standing"; **Reg. Number: 0423089**)  
*Sponsors: Open Association of Research Society  
Open Scientific Standards*

### *Publisher's Headquarters office*

Global Journals Headquarters  
301st Edgewater Place Suite, 100 Edgewater Dr.-Pl,  
Wakefield MASSACHUSETTS, Pin: 01880,  
United States of America  
USA Toll Free: +001-888-839-7392  
USA Toll Free Fax: +001-888-839-7392

### *Offset Typesetting*

Global Journals Incorporated  
2nd, Lansdowne, Lansdowne Rd., Croydon-Surrey,  
Pin: CR9 2ER, United Kingdom

### *Packaging & Continental Dispatching*

Global Journals  
E-3130 Sudama Nagar, Near Gopur Square,  
Indore, M.P., Pin:452009, India

### *Find a correspondence nodal officer near you*

To find nodal officer of your country, please  
email us at [local@globaljournals.org](mailto:local@globaljournals.org)

### *eContacts*

Press Inquiries: [press@globaljournals.org](mailto:press@globaljournals.org)  
Investor Inquiries: [investors@globaljournals.org](mailto:investors@globaljournals.org)  
Technical Support: [technology@globaljournals.org](mailto:technology@globaljournals.org)  
Media & Releases: [media@globaljournals.org](mailto:media@globaljournals.org)

### *Pricing (Including by Air Parcel Charges):*

#### *For Authors:*

22 USD (B/W) & 50 USD (Color)  
*Yearly Subscription (Personal & Institutional):*  
200 USD (B/W) & 250 USD (Color)

INTEGRATED EDITORIAL BOARD  
(COMPUTER SCIENCE, ENGINEERING, MEDICAL, MANAGEMENT, NATURAL  
SCIENCE, SOCIAL SCIENCE)

**John A. Hamilton, "Drew" Jr.,**  
Ph.D., Professor, Management  
Computer Science and Software  
Engineering  
Director, Information Assurance  
Laboratory  
Auburn University

**Dr. Henry Hexmoor**  
IEEE senior member since 2004  
Ph.D. Computer Science, University at  
Buffalo  
Department of Computer Science  
Southern Illinois University at Carbondale

**Dr. Osman Balci, Professor**  
Department of Computer Science  
Virginia Tech, Virginia University  
Ph.D. and M.S. Syracuse University,  
Syracuse, New York  
M.S. and B.S. Bogazici University,  
Istanbul, Turkey

**Yogita Bajpai**  
M.Sc. (Computer Science), FICCT  
U.S.A. Email:  
yogita@computerresearch.org

**Dr. T. David A. Forbes**  
Associate Professor and Range  
Nutritionist  
Ph.D. Edinburgh University - Animal  
Nutrition  
M.S. Aberdeen University - Animal  
Nutrition  
B.A. University of Dublin- Zoology

**Dr. Wenying Feng**  
Professor, Department of Computing &  
Information Systems  
Department of Mathematics  
Trent University, Peterborough,  
ON Canada K9J 7B8

**Dr. Thomas Wischgoll**  
Computer Science and Engineering,  
Wright State University, Dayton, Ohio  
B.S., M.S., Ph.D.  
(University of Kaiserslautern)

**Dr. Abdurrahman Arslanyilmaz**  
Computer Science & Information Systems  
Department  
Youngstown State University  
Ph.D., Texas A&M University  
University of Missouri, Columbia  
Gazi University, Turkey

**Dr. Xiaohong He**  
Professor of International Business  
University of Quinnipiac  
BS, Jilin Institute of Technology; MA, MS,  
PhD,. (University of Texas-Dallas)

**Burcin Becerik-Gerber**  
University of Southern California  
Ph.D. in Civil Engineering  
DDes from Harvard University  
M.S. from University of California, Berkeley  
& Istanbul University

**Dr. Bart Lambrecht**

Director of Research in Accounting and Finance  
Professor of Finance  
Lancaster University Management School  
BA (Antwerp); MPhil, MA, PhD  
(Cambridge)

**Dr. Carlos García Pont**

Associate Professor of Marketing  
IESE Business School, University of Navarra  
Doctor of Philosophy (Management),  
Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT)  
Master in Business Administration, IESE,  
University of Navarra  
Degree in Industrial Engineering,  
Universitat Politècnica de Catalunya

**Dr. Fotini Labropulu**

Mathematics - Luther College  
University of Regina  
Ph.D., M.Sc. in Mathematics  
B.A. (Honors) in Mathematics  
University of Windsor

**Dr. Lynn Lim**

Reader in Business and Marketing  
Roehampton University, London  
BCom, PGDip, MBA (Distinction), PhD,  
FHEA

**Dr. Mihaly Mezei**

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR  
Department of Structural and Chemical  
Biology, Mount Sinai School of Medical  
Center  
Ph.D., Eötvös Loránd University  
Postdoctoral Training,  
New York University

**Dr. Söhnke M. Bartram**

Department of Accounting and Finance  
Lancaster University Management School  
Ph.D. (WHU Koblenz)  
MBA/BBA (University of Saarbrücken)

**Dr. Miguel Angel Ariño**

Professor of Decision Sciences  
IESE Business School  
Barcelona, Spain (Universidad de Navarra)  
CEIBS (China Europe International Business School).  
Beijing, Shanghai and Shenzhen  
Ph.D. in Mathematics  
University of Barcelona  
BA in Mathematics (Licenciatura)  
University of Barcelona

**Philip G. Moscoso**

Technology and Operations Management  
IESE Business School, University of Navarra  
Ph.D in Industrial Engineering and Management, ETH Zurich  
M.Sc. in Chemical Engineering, ETH Zurich

**Dr. Sanjay Dixit, M.D.**

Director, EP Laboratories, Philadelphia VA  
Medical Center  
Cardiovascular Medicine - Cardiac  
Arrhythmia  
Univ of Penn School of Medicine

**Dr. Han-Xiang Deng**

MD., Ph.D  
Associate Professor and Research  
Department Division of Neuromuscular  
Medicine  
Department of Neurology and Clinical  
Neuroscience  
Northwestern University  
Feinberg School of Medicine

**Dr. Pina C. Sanelli**

Associate Professor of Public Health  
Weill Cornell Medical College  
Associate Attending Radiologist  
NewYork-Presbyterian Hospital  
MRI, MRA, CT, and CTA  
Neuroradiology and Diagnostic  
Radiology  
M.D., State University of New York at  
Buffalo, School of Medicine and  
Biomedical Sciences

**Dr. Roberto Sanchez**

Associate Professor  
Department of Structural and Chemical  
Biology  
Mount Sinai School of Medicine  
Ph.D., The Rockefeller University

**Dr. Wen-Yih Sun**

Professor of Earth and Atmospheric  
SciencesPurdue University Director  
National Center for Typhoon and  
Flooding Research, Taiwan  
University Chair Professor  
Department of Atmospheric Sciences,  
National Central University, Chung-Li,  
TaiwanUniversity Chair Professor  
Institute of Environmental Engineering,  
National Chiao Tung University, Hsin-  
chu, Taiwan.Ph.D., MS The University of  
Chicago, Geophysical Sciences  
BS National Taiwan University,  
Atmospheric Sciences  
Associate Professor of Radiology

**Dr. Michael R. Rudnick**

M.D., FACP  
Associate Professor of Medicine  
Chief, Renal Electrolyte and  
Hypertension Division (PMC)  
Penn Medicine, University of  
Pennsylvania  
Presbyterian Medical Center,  
Philadelphia  
Nephrology and Internal Medicine  
Certified by the American Board of  
Internal Medicine

**Dr. Bassey Benjamin Esu**

B.Sc. Marketing; MBA Marketing; Ph.D  
Marketing  
Lecturer, Department of Marketing,  
University of Calabar  
Tourism Consultant, Cross River State  
Tourism Development Department  
Co-ordinator , Sustainable Tourism  
Initiative, Calabar, Nigeria

**Dr. Aziz M. Barbar, Ph.D.**

IEEE Senior Member  
Chairperson, Department of Computer  
Science  
AUST - American University of Science &  
Technology  
Alfred Naccash Avenue – Ashrafieh

## PRESIDENT EDITOR (HON.)

---

### **Dr. George Perry, (Neuroscientist)**

Dean and Professor, College of Sciences

Denham Harman Research Award (American Aging Association)

ISI Highly Cited Researcher, Iberoamerican Molecular Biology Organization

AAAS Fellow, Correspondent Member of Spanish Royal Academy of Sciences

University of Texas at San Antonio

Postdoctoral Fellow (Department of Cell Biology)

Baylor College of Medicine

Houston, Texas, United States

## CHIEF AUTHOR (HON.)

---

### **Dr. R.K. Dixit**

M.Sc., Ph.D., FICCT

Chief Author, India

Email: [authorind@computerresearch.org](mailto:authorind@computerresearch.org)

## DEAN & EDITOR-IN-CHIEF (HON.)

---

### **Vivek Dubey(HON.)**

MS (Industrial Engineering),

MS (Mechanical Engineering)

University of Wisconsin, FICCT

Editor-in-Chief, USA

[editorusa@computerresearch.org](mailto:editorusa@computerresearch.org)

### **Sangita Dixit**

M.Sc., FICCT

Dean & Chancellor (Asia Pacific)

[deanind@computerresearch.org](mailto:deanind@computerresearch.org)

### **Suyash Dixit**

(B.E., Computer Science Engineering), FICCTT

President, Web Administration and

Development , CEO at IOSRD

COO at GAOR & OSS

### **Er. Suyog Dixit**

(M. Tech), BE (HONS. in CSE), FICCT

SAP Certified Consultant

CEO at IOSRD, GAOR & OSS

Technical Dean, Global Journals Inc. (US)

Website: [www.suyogdixit.com](http://www.suyogdixit.com)

Email: [suyog@suyogdixit.com](mailto:suyog@suyogdixit.com)

### **Pritesh Rajvaidya**

(MS) Computer Science Department

California State University

BE (Computer Science), FICCT

Technical Dean, USA

Email: [pritesh@computerresearch.org](mailto:pritesh@computerresearch.org)

### **Luis Galárraga**

J!Research Project Leader

Saarbrücken, Germany

## CONTENTS OF THE ISSUE

---

- i. Copyright Notice
- ii. Editorial Board Members
- iii. Chief Author and Dean
- iv. Contents of the Issue
  
1. The Metabolic Syndrome Latest Medical and Biochemical Trends. *1-3*
2. Latest Insight into the Relation of Metabolic Syndrome with Thyroid Dysfunction. *5-12*
3. Prevalence of Cervical Cancer in Developing Country: Pakistan. *13-17*
4. Lipid Profile Alterations in the Metabolic Syndrome the Latest Biochemical and Physiological Aspect. *19-23*
5. Prevalence of Communicable Diseases and Causes of Variability among Secondary Schools in Kisumu County, Kenya. *25-96*
  
- v. Fellows and Auxiliary Memberships
- vi. Process of Submission of Research Paper
- vii. Preferred Author Guidelines
- viii. Index



GLOBAL JOURNAL OF MEDICAL RESEARCH: F  
DISEASES

Volume 15 Issue 3 Version 1.0 Year 2015

Type: Double Blind Peer Reviewed International Research Journal

Publisher: Global Journals Inc. (USA)

Online ISSN: 2249-4618 & Print ISSN: 0975-5888

## The Metabolic Syndrome Latest Medical and Biochemical Trends

By Dr. Shazia Nazir, Dr. Ashfaq ul Hassan & Dr. Muddassir N

*SKIMS Medical College Bemina, India*

**Abstract-** The world population is noting an increasing trend towards development of particular diseases like Obesity, hypertension, diabetes mellitus. Some of them are turning into modern epidemics. These diseases can occur in isolation. Recent trends suggest the interlink age of the disease patterns leading to development of syndromes. One such syndrome is the Metabolic Syndrome. The Metabolic Syndrome is one of the major public health issues of this century. It is constellation of physical conditions and metabolic abnormalities commonly found in association with increased risk for development of Type 2 diabetes mellitus, Cardiovascular disease and other medical conditions. The article Deals with the Medical and Biochemical events occurring as a result of this developing medical illness.

**Keywords:** *diabetes, insulin, hypertension, obesity, resistance, panel, metabolic, lipoprotein.*

**GJMR-F Classification :** *NLMC Code: WD 200*



*Strictly as per the compliance and regulations of:*



# The Metabolic Syndrome Latest Medical and Biochemical Trends

Dr. Shazia Nazir <sup>α</sup>, Dr. Ashfaq ul Hassan <sup>σ</sup> & Dr. Muddassir N <sup>ρ</sup>

**Abstract-** The world population is noting an increasing trend towards development of particular diseases like Obesity, hypertension, diabetes mellitus. Some of them are turning into modern epidemics. These diseases can occur in isolation. Recent trends suggest the interlink age of the disease patterns leading to development of syndromes. One such syndrome is the Metabolic Syndrome. The Metabolic Syndrome is one of the major public health issues of this century. It is constellation of physical conditions and metabolic abnormalities commonly found in association with increased risk for development of Type 2 diabetes mellitus, Cardiovascular disease and other medical conditions. The article Deals with the Medical and Biochemical events occurring as a result of this developing medical illness.

**Keywords:** diabetes, insulin, hypertension, obesity, resistance, panel, metabolic, lipoprotein.

## I. INTRODUCTION

The World Health Organization (WHO) developed a definition in 1998 stating that individual need to show evidence of insulin resistance and, at least 2 of 4 factors should be present namely-hypertension, hyperlipidemia, obesity and microalbuminuria. In 2001, the National cholesterol Education program (NCEP) Adult Treatment panel (ATP III) suggested another definition for the Metabolic Syndrome according to which at least 3 of 5 factors should be present for diagnosis and the five factors/components are the following: increased waist circumference, hypertriglyceridermia, low high density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol, hypertension and fasting glucose of 110 mg/dl or high.

### a) Text

Obesity, insulin resistance, physical inactivity, advanced age and hormonal imbalance have been suggested as the underlying risk factors for the development of metabolic syndrome. Thyroid hormones play an important role in regulating energy homeostasis, glucose and lipid metabolism. The metabolic syndrome<sup>1</sup> was first described in the 1920 by Kylin, a Swedish physician, as the association of high blood pressure (hypertension), high blood glucose (hyperglycemia) and gout. The link between the

syndrome features and cardiovascular disease was made as early as the 1960s by Welborn and by Camus, the latter coining the term "Tri syndrome Metabolique".<sup>2</sup> Advances in the 1970s and early 1980s expanded our understanding of the link of these to coronary heart disease, even in the absence of diabetes, and linked the metabolic risk factors to atherosclerosis.<sup>3</sup> Today, the most common definitions are the (WHO version, revised) International Diabetes Federation definition of 2005 and the revised NCEP ATP definition of 2005.<sup>4</sup>

**Table 1 :** WHO Definition of Metabolic Syndrome

Hypertension	Raised arterial pressure (140/90 mmHg) or antihypertensive medication
Dyslipidemia	Raised plasma triglyceride(>1.7 mmol/L) or low HDL cholesterol (<0.9 mmol/L) in men and (<1.0mmol/L) in women
Central or general obesity	Waist to hip ratio >0.90 in men: >0.85 in women or BMI>30Kg/m <sup>2</sup>
Microalbuminuria	Urinary albumin excretion rate >20ug/min or albumin: creatinine ratio>30 mg/g

**Table 2 :** National Cholesterol education program (NCEP) Adult Treatment Panel III (ATPIII)

Risk factors	Defining levels*
Abdominal obesity (waist circumference)	>102 cm(> 40 inch) >88cm (> 35 inches)
Men	
Women	
Triglycerides	>150 mg/dl
HDL Cholesterol	
Men	<40mg/dl
Women	<50mg/dl
Blood Pressure	>130/85 mm Hg
Fasting Glucose	>110 mg/dl

\*Metabolic syndrome: diagnosis is established when >3 of these risk factors are present

The prevalence of the metabolic syndrome depends on age, ethnic background, and gender. It rises linearly from 20 to 50 years and plateaus thereafter. Looking at various studies around the world, which included population samples, aged from 20 to 25 and upwards, the prevalence varies from 8% (India) to 24% (United States) in men and from 7% (France) to 46% (India) in women.<sup>5</sup>

**Author α:** Tutor Demonstrator Biochemistry SKIMS Medical College Bemina. e-mail drshaziayasir@hotmail.com

**Author σ:** Consultant and Head Anatomy SKIMS Medical College Bemina. e-mail: ash Hassan@rediffmail.com

**Author ρ:** Resident Rochford Hospital South Essex UK.

## II. COMPONENTS OF METABOLIC SYNDROME

### a) Abdominal Obesity

The genetic and environmental factors play a major role in metabolic and cardiovascular of obesity. Abdominal obesity is related, to greater risk of cardiovascular events and Type 2 DM. Waist-circumference is a general index of central fat mass and it reflects both abdominal subcutaneous adipose tissue (SAT) and abdominal visceral adipose tissue (VAT) and is major determinant of metabolic and cardiovascular complication of obesity<sup>6</sup>. Visceral obesity may partly be a marker of a dysmetabolic state and partly a cause of the metabolic syndrome. Although waist circumference is a better marker of abdominal fat accumulation than the body mass index, an elevated waistline alone is not sufficient to diagnose visceral obesity and have proposed that an elevated fasting triglyceride concentration could represent, when waist circumference is increased, a simple clinical marker of excess visceral/ectopic fat.<sup>7</sup> Abdominal obesity, due to intra-abdominal adiposity, drives the progression of multiple cardiometabolic risk factors independently of body mass index. This occurs both through altered secretion of adipocyte-derived biologically active substances (adipokines), including free fatty acids, adiponectin, interleukin-6, tumour necrosis factor alpha, and plasminogen activator inhibitor- I, and through exacerbation of insulin resistance and associated cardiometabolic risk factors.<sup>8</sup>

### b) Increased Triglycerides

Dyslipidemia is widely established as an independent risk factor for CVD. Low HDL Cholesterol and hypertriglyceridemia have been found to be independent and significantly related to myocardial infarction and stroke in patient with Metabolic Syndrome. The dyslipidemia may be caused by combination of overproduction of very low density lipoprotein (VLDL), apoB-100, decreased catabolism of apo B containing particle and increased catabolism of HDL apo-AI particle. In Type 2 DM, insulin resistance and obesity combine to cause hypertriglyceridemia and low HDL-C, due to over production of VLDL. Plasma LDL-C levels are normal in Metabolic Syndrome though LDL particles are smaller and denser than normal which may be associated with increased cardiovascular risk.<sup>9</sup> The effects of low HDL-C and high triglyceride levels, are related to greater risk of coronary disease due to variety Of environmental and genetic factors. The genetic variants of lipoprotein lipase, hepatic lipase, cholesterol ester transfer protein and peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors have effects on HDL-C and TG levels in population which contributes to the development of Metabolic syndrome.

The primary defect is probably focused in the inability to incorporate the Free fatty acids to

triglycerides (TGs) by the adipose tissue (inadequate esterification)<sup>27</sup>. This result is reduced fatty acid trapping and consequent retention by the adipose tissue. The insulin resistance also causes reduced retention of FFA by adipocytes. Both these abnormalities lead to the increased flux of FFA back in the liver. Adipose tissue is a prominent source of cholesteryl ester transfer protein.<sup>10</sup> Cholesteryl ester transfer protein is an important determinant of lipoprotein composition because of its capacity to mediate the transfer of cholesteryl esters from cholesteryl ester rich lipoproteins to TG rich lipoproteins in exchange for TGs.<sup>11</sup> In obese subjects, cholesteryl ester transfer protein activity and mass are increased.<sup>12</sup>

Increased flux of FFA from periphery to the liver in increasing resistance state stimulates hepatic TG synthesis which in turn promotes the assembly & secretion of TG containing VLDL" as well as apo B production in liver.

### c) Low Hdl-Cholesterol

Low HDL-Cholesterol in patient with Metabolic syndrome is often considered as secondary to raised TG.<sup>13</sup> Lipid exchange is taking place between LDL & LDL particles mediated by cholesterol ester transport protein (CETP). These TG rich but cholesterol depleted HDLC is more prone to be catabolized. They undergo hydrolysis of their TGs components and dissociation of their protein component apo-A (the main protein of HDL).<sup>14</sup> There is circumstantial evidence that low HDL-C contributes to increase risk of atherosclerosis in this Condition.<sup>15</sup>

### d) Blood Pressure

There is tendency of weight gain in middle age, which is positively correlated with blood pressure levels and highly related to the prevalence and incidence of hypertension in the population.<sup>16</sup> The reduction of blood pressure to level <130/85 mm Hg in patients suffering with diabetes mellitus or at high risk of cardiovascular disease is effective. This fact helped to incorporate blood pressure as part of Metabolic Syndrome. The blood pressure measured in sitting posture and at rest if it is >130/85 mm Hg is a part of Metabolic Syndrome. Most of the affected person having Metabolic syndrome are overweight or obese hence to reduce the blood pressure specific attention towards weight reduction is given; diet restriction-active lifestyle and exercises and if required pharmacological agents are given. The relation between insulin resistance and hypertension is well established. Several different mechanisms are proposed. First, insulin is a vasodilator when given intravenously to people of normal weight, with secondary effects on sodium reabsorption in the kidney. In the setting of insulin resistance, the vasodilatory effect of insulin can be lost, but the renal effect on sodium reabsorption preserved. Fatty acids themselves can mediate relative vasoconstriction. Hyperinsulinaemia

may result in increased sympathetic nervous system activity and contribute to the development of hypertension.

#### e) *Impaired Fasting Glucose*

It is believed that insulin resistance is the pathophysiological process that underlying the cardiovascular risk factor in Metabolic syndrome. Indices of insulin resistance predicts atherosclerosis and cardiovascular events independent other risk factors including fasting glucose and lipid levels. Impaired fasting glucose is diagnosed when fasting levels are 110 to 126 mg/dl on two occasions according to criteria of the American Diabetes Association. At a given level of obesity, an individual may have normal glucose tolerance, impaired glucose tolerance, on type 2 diabetes mellitus. The factors that determine the degree of impairment of glucose metabolism are insulin sensitivity and beta cell reserve capacity. Insulin sensitivity in normal individuals varies by approximately 3-fold. In insulin resistance individuals, the pancreatic  $\beta$  cells must secrete more insulin to maintain euglycemia. However, prolonged hyperfunction can lead to  $\beta$  cell exhaustion. The biochemical/molecular basis of  $\beta$  cell exhaustion have yet to be elucidated. Blood glucose levels then begin to rise, manifested first as impaired glucose tolerance and later as type 2 diabetes mellitus.<sup>17</sup>

### III. CONCLUSION

With the increasing evidence in increasing development of Metabolic syndrome throughout the world both in developed world as well as developing world and the presence of factors which increase the risks of significant morbidity and mortality as a result of metabolic syndrome, basic biochemical alterations occurring need to be properly understood so as to frame a therapeutic schedule for all the major factors which play an important role in the development of the syndrome and to evolve effective pharmacotherapy on the basis of biochemical alterations occurring in the disease.

### REFERENCES RÉFÉRENCES REFERENCIAS

1. Kahn R et al. The metabolic syndrome: Time for a critical appraisal-joint statement from the American Diabetes Association and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2005; 28(9):2289-2304.
2. Scott R et al. Will acarbose improve the metabolic abnormalities of insulin-resistant type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Research and Clinical Practice* 1999, March; 43 (Issue 3): 179-185.
3. Shafrir E. Animal models of syndrome X. *Current Topics in Diabetes Research* 1993; 12:165-181.
4. Wilson PWF, D'Agostino RB, Parise H, Sullivan L, Meigs JB. The metabolic syndrome as a precursor of cardiovascular disease and type 2 diabetes. *Circulation* 2005; 112:3066-3072.
5. Cameron AJ, Shaw JE, Zimmet PZ. The metabolic syndrome: prevalence in worldwide populations. *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am* 2004; 33:351-35.
6. Nieves, DJ, Cnop M, Retzlaff B. The atherogenic lipoprotein profile associated with obesity and insulin resistance is largely attributable to intra-abdominal fat. *Diabetes* 2003; 52:17 2-9.
7. Ross R, Freeman J, Hudson R, Janssen I. Abdominal obesity, muscle composition, and insulin resistance in premenopausal women. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2002; 87:5044-5051.
8. Danese MD, Ladenson PW, Meinert CL, Powe NR. Clinical review 115: effect of thyroxin therapy on serum lipoproteins in patients with mild thyroid failure: a quantitative review of the literature. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2000; 85: 2993-3001
9. Ginsberg, HN, Haung, LS. The insulin resistance syndrome: impact on lipoprotein metabolism and atherothrombosis. *J Cardiovasc Risk* 2000; 7:3235-3331.
10. Drayna D, Jamagin AS, Mclean J. cloning and sequencing of the human cholesteryl ester transfer protein cDNA. *Nature* 1987; 327:6324.
11. Morton RE. Cholesteryl ester transfer protein and its plasma regulator: lipid transfer inhibitor protein. *Curr Opin Lipidol* 1999; 10:321-7.
12. Arai T, Yamashita S, Hirano K. Increased plasma cholesteryl ester transfer protein in obese subjects: a possible mechanism for the reduction of serum HDL cholesterol levels in obesity. *Arterioscler Thromb* 1994; 14:1129-36.
13. Reilly MP, Rader DJ. The metabolic syndrome; more than the sum of its parts. *Circulation* 2003; 108:1546-51.
14. Wilson PW, Grundy SM. The metabolic syndrome: practical guide to origins and treatment: part I. *Circulation* 2003; 108:1422-4.
15. Barter PJ, Rye KA. High density lipoproteins and coronary heart disease. *Atherosclerosis* 1996; 121:1-12.
16. Wilson PW, Kannel WB, Silbershatz, H. Clustering of metabolic factors and coronary heart disease. *Arch Intern Med* 1999; 159:1104-9.
17. Yip J, Facchini FS, Reaven GM. Resistance to insulin-mediated glucose disposal as a predictor of cardiovascular disease. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 1998; 83:2773-6.

This page is intentionally left blank



GLOBAL JOURNAL OF MEDICAL RESEARCH: F  
DISEASES

Volume 15 Issue 3 Version 1.0 Year 2015

Type: Double Blind Peer Reviewed International Research Journal

Publisher: Global Journals Inc. (USA)

Online ISSN: 2249-4618 & Print ISSN: 0975-5888

## Latest Insight into the Relation of Metabolic Syndrome with Thyroid Dysfunction

By Dr. Shazia Nazir, Dr. M. Itagappa & Dr. Ashfaq ul Hassan

*SKIMS Medical College Srinagar, India*

**Abstract-** The Metabolic syndrome is a modern epidemic and is considered to be one of the major public health issues of this century. It is constellation of physical conditions and metabolic abnormalities commonly found in association with increased risk for development of Type II diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular disease and other medical conditions. Thyroid hormones play an important role in regulating energy homeostasis. In addition, thyroid hormones can regulate lipoprotein, glucose metabolism and blood pressure. Thus there is possibility of thyroid dysfunction (may be cause or effect) having an association with metabolic syndrome and its component. The study was aimed to find out occurrence of metabolic syndrome in hypothyroid patients and to determine the association between the components of metabolic syndrome and thyroid hypofunction.

**Keywords:** *thyroid, hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism, subclinical, lipoprotein. TRH (thyroid releasing hormone), TSH (thyroid stimulating hormone).*

**GJMR-F Classification :** *NLMC Code: WK 200, WD 200*



*Strictly as per the compliance and regulations of:*



© 2015. Dr. Shazia Nazir, Dr. M. Itagappa & Dr. Ashfaq ul Hassan. This is a research/review paper, distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial 3.0 Unported License <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/3.0/>, permitting all non-commercial use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

# Latest Insight into the Relation of Metabolic Syndrome with Thyroid Dysfunction

Dr. Shazia Nazir <sup>α</sup>, Dr. M. Itagappa <sup>σ</sup> & Dr. Ashfaq ul Hassan <sup>ρ</sup>

**Abstract-** The Metabolic syndrome is a modern epidemic and is considered to be one of the major public health issues of this century. It is constellation of physical conditions and metabolic abnormalities commonly found in association with increased risk for development of Type II diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular disease and other medical conditions. Thyroid hormones play an important role in regulating energy homeostasis. In addition, thyroid hormones can regulate lipoprotein, glucose metabolism and blood pressure. Thus there is possibility of thyroid dysfunction (may be cause or effect) having an association with metabolic syndrome and its component. The study was aimed to find out occurrence of metabolic syndrome in hypothyroid patients and to determine the association between the components of metabolic syndrome and thyroid hypofunction.

**Keywords:** thyroid, hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism, subclinical, lipoprotein. TRH (thyroid releasing hormone), TSH (thyroid stimulating hormone).

## I. INTRODUCTION AND TEXT

**Place of Study:** The study was conducted in the Department of Biochemistry, Santosh Medical College and Department of Medicine, Santosh Hospital, Ghaziabad (U.P.)

**Sample Size and Sample Frame:** A total of 118 cases were studied.

**Period of Study:** 1.5 Years

**Inclusion Criteria:** Patients attending the Endocrinology clinic and Medicine OPD with clinical diagnosis of hypothyroidism.

**Exclusion Criteria:** Patients with known diabetes with or without treatment, severe liver, heart and renal failure.

Patients receiving any medication that may alter thyroid function and lipid profiles.

Thyroid Hormones are important for multiple reasons. Thyroid hormones play an important role in regulating energy homeostasis.<sup>1</sup> They can stimulate expression of uncoupling proteins in the mitochondria of fat and skeletal muscle, modulate adrenergic receptor numbers by enhancing responsiveness of catecholamine, and thus regulate metabolic rate and body weight.<sup>2</sup> In addition, thyroid hormones can regulate

**Author  $\alpha$ :** MBBS MD Tutor Department of Biochemistry SKIMS Medical College Srinagar, India. e-mail: drshaziayasir@hotmail.com

**Author  $\sigma$ :** Professor and head Department of Biochemistry, Santosh Medical College, Delhi.

**Author  $\rho$ :** MBBS, MS. Consultant Department of Anatomy SKIMS Medical College Srinagar, India. e-mail: ashhassan@rediffmail.com

lipoprotein and glucose metabolism and blood pressure. Thyroid function testing is obtained more frequently than any other endocrine screen in the evaluation of thyroid dysfunctions. The synthesis of **thyroid hormone** is almost entirely  $T_4$ , but as iodine becomes scarce, the synthesis of  $T_3$  increases.  **$T_3$  is the more active form of the hormone**, and peripheral tissues can regulate the conversion of  $T_4$  into either  $T_3$  (more active) or  $rT_3$  (not active). **Thyroid hormones increase the metabolic rate of most tissues.** Although it does not affect the metabolic rate of nervous tissue, it is absolutely necessary for postnatal brain maturation. **TSH is regulated** mainly by circulating  $T_4$ , but the  $T_4$  entering the thyrotrophs must be converted to  $T_3$  before it affects the negative feedback loop. **Thyroxine causes:**

- Increase in BMR
- Increase in Protein Synthesis
- Stimulation of carbohydrate metabolism.
- Decrease of cholesterol and TG levels in blood.
- Increases deposition of fats in liver (Fatty liver)
- Increase in heat production
- Decrease of body weight
- Increase in overall activity of Cardiovascular system
- Increase in rate and force of respiration
- Increase in appetite and food intake
- Development of Nervous system

## II. THYROID DYSFUNCTIONS

### a) Hyperthyroidism

Hyperthyroidism results from the excess synthesis of thyroid hormones by the thyroid gland. The prevalence of hyperthyroidism in the general population is about 0.5% and is associated with the Graves disease in 80% of cases. Other causes include toxic nodular goitre, thyroid and pituitary adenomas, thyroiditis, use of exogenous thyroid hormones, thyroid carcinoma, hydatiform moles and stromal ovaries. Signs and symptoms of hyperthyroidism includes increases appetite, weight loss, palpitation, tachycardia, frequent bowel movements, menstrual disturbance, muscle weakness and catabolism of muscle protein, exophthalmia, lid lag, infrequent blinking and hyperactive deep tendon reflexes. In case of thyroiditis, patients may experience pain and tenderness in the thyroid region.<sup>4</sup>

### b) Hypothyroidism

Hypothyroidism results from the inadequate production of thyroid hormone, and is classified as clinical or sub-clinical depending on the degree of clinical severity and the extent of abnormalities in thyroid indices. In overt or clinical hypothyroidism hormones level are low and TSH is elevated. Subclinical hypothyroidism describes a condition in which  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  levels are normal but TSH is elevated, or the TSH response to TRH infusion is exaggerated. The prevalence of clinical hypothyroidism is approximately 2% in women and less than 0.1% in men.<sup>5</sup>

The significantly higher rate of hypothyroidism in women may reflect the stimulating effect of female reproductive hormones on immunologic function, producing greater rate of autoimmune disease in women.<sup>6</sup> The prevalence of thyroid antibodies is approximately 3 to 4 times higher in women compared with men and rise with age. Women aged 44 to 54, 21% to 26% have been found to have thyroid antibodies.<sup>7</sup> The prevalence of overt hypothyroidism also rises with age, particularly in women; coincident with the rise in the prevalence of autoimmune thyroiditis.<sup>8</sup> Subclinical hypothyroidism also predominates in women, occurring in approximately 75% of women and 3% in men. Elderly women are estimated to have up to 16% rate of sub-clinical hypothyroidism.<sup>9</sup> Hashimotos thyroiditis (chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis) is the most common cause of clinical hypothyroidism in the United States. Other causes include idiopathic atrophy, deficiency of dietary iodine, hypopituitarism, and hypothalamic disease resulting in deficiency TRH production and iatrogenic hypothyroidism (i.e. from medication such as lithium). In patients experiencing a severe medical condition,  $T_3$  level may be low from decreased conversion of  $T_4$  to  $T_3$  a condition known as euthyroid sick syndrome.<sup>10</sup>

Symptoms of hypothyroidism tend to manifest once TSH level surpass 8-12 mIU/L and include low energy appetite and sleep change, poor concentration, apathy and lung expanse latency.<sup>11</sup> Other symptoms include cold intolerance, constipation, muscle cramps, parathesis, mental disturbances (amenorrhea or menorrhagea) dyspnea dizziness, syncope, reduced hearing, poor appetite, weight gain, brittle and thinning hair, husky voice, bradycardia, cardiomegaly low voltage complexes on ECG, elevated levels of cholesterol and triglycerides and normochromic, normocytic anemia from a reduced rate of RBC production.

The symptoms of hypothyroidism are correctable with thyroid supplementation but may not resolve until several weeks after the normalization of serum thyroid hormone levels.<sup>12</sup> Exogenous thyroid hormone is administered as L-thyroxin, l-triiodothyronine (Synthetic  $T_3$ ), preparations of mixed synthetic  $T_4$  and  $T_3$  and desiccated thyroid. L-thyroxin and l-triiodothyronine

typically range between 25 to 100pgm/day and 12.5 to 50pgm/day respectively.

### c) Subclinical Hypothyroidism

Subclinical hypothyroidism (SCH) is defined as a serum thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) level above the upper limit of normal despite normal levels of serum free thyroxine. Serum TSH has a log-linear relationship with circulating thyroid hormone levels (a 2-fold change in free thyroxine will produce a 100-fold change in TSH). Thus, serum TSH measurement is the necessary test for diagnosis of mild thyroid failure when the peripheral thyroid hormone levels are within normal laboratory range.<sup>13</sup> The individual range for peripheral thyroid hormones is narrower than the population reference laboratory range; therefore, a slight reduction within the normal range will result in elevation of serum TSH above the normal range. Subclinical hypothyroidism or mild thyroid failure is a common problem, with a prevalence of 3% to 8% in the population without known thyroid disease.<sup>14</sup> The prevalence increases with age and is higher in women. After the sixth decade of life, the prevalence in men approaches that of women, with a combined prevalence of 10%. Antithyroid antibodies can be detected in 80% of patients with SCH have a serum TSH of less than 10 mIU/L.

Before diagnosis of SCH, other causes of an elevated TSH level, such as recovery from nonthyroidal illness, assay variability, presence of heterophile antibodies interfering with the SCH assay, and certain cases of central hypothyroidism with biologically inactive TSH and thyroid hormone resistance, should be excluded. However, the most common cause of elevated TSH is autoimmune thyroid disease. Previous radioiodine therapy, thyroid surgery, and external radiation therapy can also result in mild thyroid failure. Transient SCH may occur after episodes of postpartum, silent, and granulomatous thyroiditis.<sup>15</sup> The clinical importance of and therapy for mild elevation of serum TSH (<10 mIU/L)<sup>5</sup> and the exact upper limit of normal for the serum TSH level remain subjects of debate.<sup>16</sup> When the TSH is above 10mIU/L, levothyroxine therapy is generally agreed to be appropriate. However, management of patients with a serum TSH level of less than 10 mIU/L is controversial.<sup>17</sup> Some authors argue for routine and some for selective therapy. A recent 2007 meta-analysis of 14 randomized clinical trials enrolling a total of 350 patients concluded that levothyroxine replacement therapy for SCH does not result in improved survival or decreased cardiovascular morbidity.

Data on health-related quality of life and symptoms did not show significant differences between intervention groups. Some evidence indicates that levothyroxine replacement improve some parameters of lipid profiles and left ventricular function.<sup>18</sup> Subclinical hypothyroidism by definition do not produce the overt

clinical feature of hypothyroidism, but subtle somatic symptoms, cognitive defects have been observed in association with this condition. symptoms include dry skin, cold intolerance, fatigue, alteration in lipid metabolism and cardiac function and lower score on memory tests. These symptoms had improved by thyroid hormone treatment. Approximately 5 to 15% of patients with subclinical hypothyroidism progress to overt hypothyroidism within a year. Patients with any thyroid antibodies are at high risk, 80% progressing to overt hypothyroidism within four years.

### III. RESULTS

The study sample comprises 118 subjects, fulfilling the inclusion criteria were recruited in the study

*Table 1(a)* : Sex distribution of metabolic syndrome. (Fig. 1a)

Sex	Metabolic Syndrome	Non Metabolic Syndrome	Total
Male	24 (20%)	19 (16.1%)	43 (36.4%)
Female	45 (38.4%)	30 (25.4%)	75 (63.5%)
Total	69 (58.4%)	49 (41.5%)	118

#### b) Age Wise Distribution of Metabolic Syndrome

The prevalence of metabolic syndrome is increasing with age with maximum in age group 40-49

with their consent. After detailed history and clinical evaluation, blood sample was taken for estimation of various biochemical parameters in serum namely  $fT_3$ ,  $fT_4$ , TSH, Insulin, Triglycerides, HDL-C, and fasting glucose. The results obtained are presented in various tables diagrams.

#### a) Sex Distribution of Metabolic Syndrome

The sex distribution of prevalence of metabolic syndrome is shown in Table 1. The percentage of male and female in metabolic syndrome were 20% and 38.4% respectively of total subjects in the study.

years and we can observe that maximum numbers of hypothyroid patients are in age group of 30-39 years with 59% of prevalence of metabolic syndrome.

*Table 1(b)* : Distribution of metabolic syndrome by age groups (Fig 1b)

Age classes (years)	All patients (n)	Metabolic Syndrome (n)
20-29	17 (14%)	5 (29%)
30-39	49 (41.5%)	29 (59%)
40-49	22 (18.6%)	16 (72%)
50-59	18 (15%)	7 (38.8%)
60-69	12 (10%)	7 (58.3%)

#### c) Distribution of Metabolic Syndrome in Thyroid Groups

Out of total 118 subjects studied 60 were in overt hypothyroid group and 58 in subclinical hypothyroid group. Among these groups metabolic

syndrome is almost equally distributed. Similarly male and female subjects were almost equal in both groups with more number of females ( $n = 22$  and  $n = 24$ ) in overt and subclinical hypothyroid groups respectively. Results in Table 2.

*Table 2* : Distribution of Metabolic Syndrome in subclinical and overt hypothyroidism

	Met syn			Non Met Syn	Total
	M	F	Total		
Overt Hypothyroid	12	22	34(56%)	26	60
Subclinical Hypothyroid	11	24	35(60%)	23	58
Total	69			49	118

#### d) Thyroid Function Test in Metabolic Syndrome

In overt hypothyroid group, both metabolic and non metabolic syndrome group,  $fT_3$ ,  $fT_4$  are comparably decreased but TSH is significantly increased in metabolic syndrome group. In subclinical hypothyroid group both  $fT_3$  and  $fT_3$  are in normal range but TSH is raised significantly in metabolic syndrome group. Levels of TSH in metabolic syndrome group is statistically significant ( $P < 0.05$ ) in overt hypothyroid group. Results in Table 3.

Table 3 : Mean and standard deviation of free  $fT_3$  free  $fT_4$  and TSH levels in metabolic syndrome and non metabolic syndrome among overt and subclinical hypothyroidism

		$fT_3$	$fT_4$	TSH
Overt hypothyroid	Non Met Syn	2.4 ± 1.12	6.4 ± 2.14	11.5 ± 4.8
	Met Syn	2.73 ± 1.32	7.30 ± 2.80	14.6 ± 5.42*
Subclinical Hypothyroid	Non Met Syn	5.6 ± 1.12	14.9 ± 2.4	8.24 ± 5.28
	Met Syn	5.1 ± 1.17	16.2 ± 2.8	9.1 ± 5.03

\* $p < 0.05$

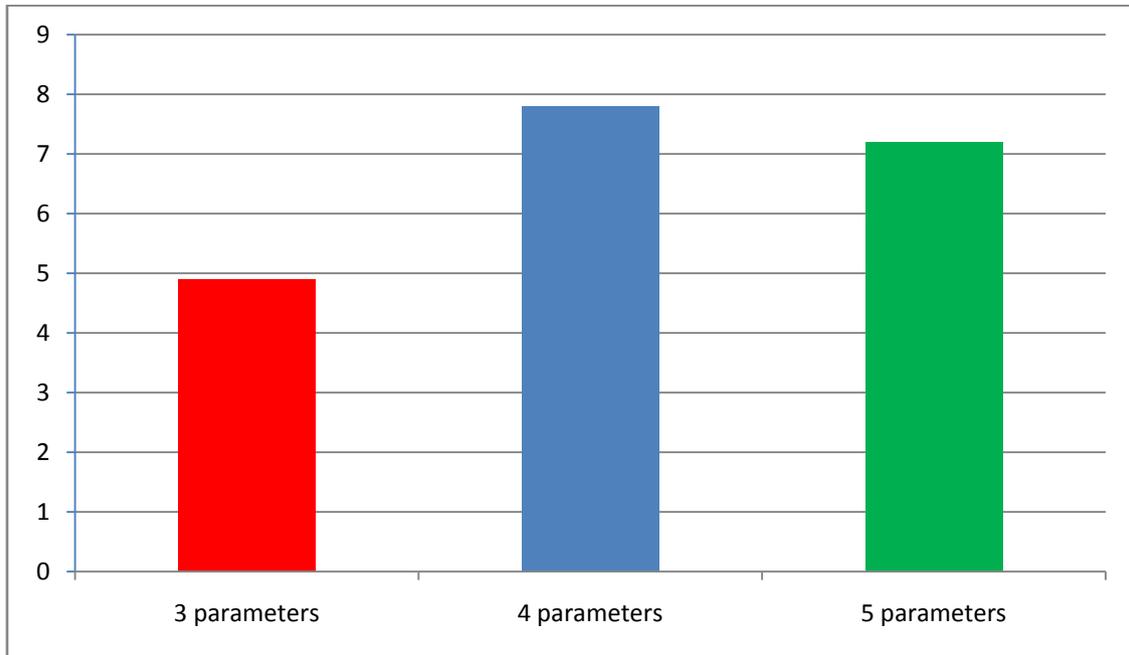


Figure : Showing relation of number of positive components of metabolic syndrome and insulin resistance in Subclinical Hypothyroidism

Metabolic Syndrome

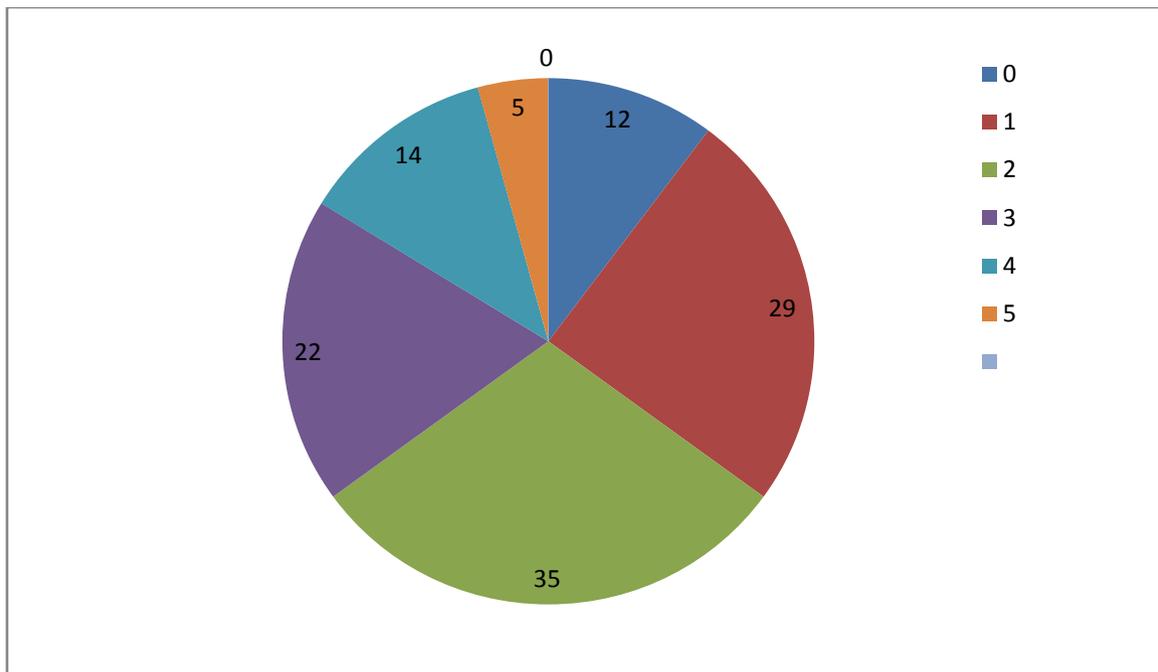


Figure : Pie Chart showing number of patients with various positive parameters in metabolic syndrome  
Distribution of positive criteria in Metabolic Syndrome cases

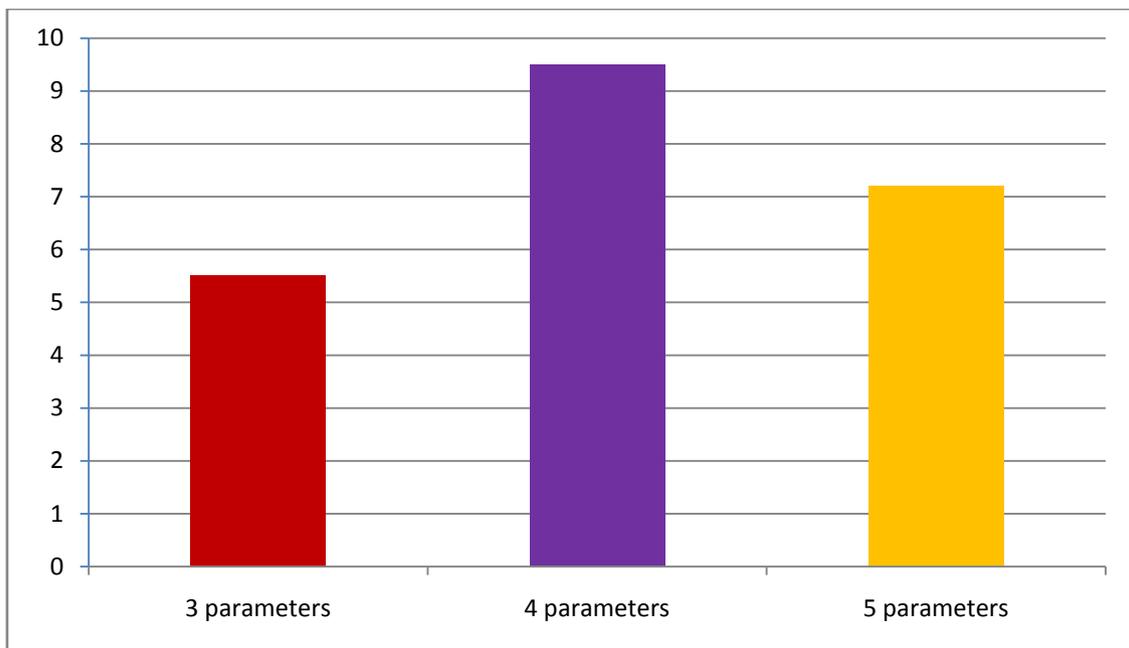


Figure : Showing relation of number of positive components of metabolic syndrome and insulin resistance in Overt Hypothyroidism

Sex Distribution in Metabolic Syndrome

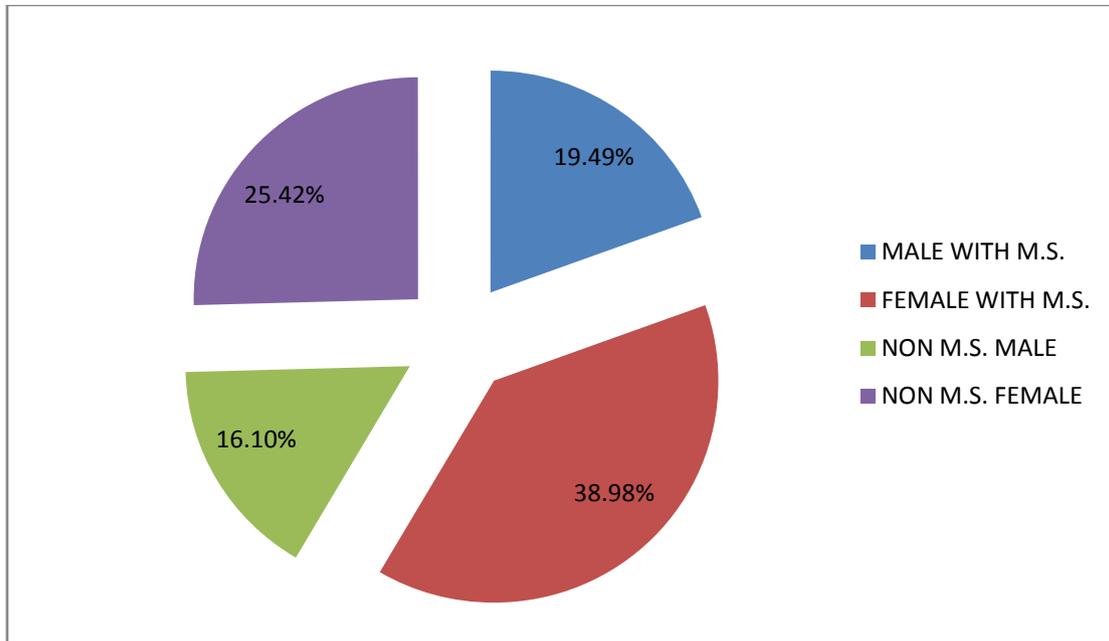


Figure : Pie chart showing sex distribution in Metabolic Syndrome

Table 4 : Comparison of Components of Metabolic syndrome in overt and subclinical hypothyroidism.

	Overt Hypothyroid		Subclinical Hypothyroid	
	Non Met Syn	Met Syn	Non Met Syn	Met Syn
WC (inch)	32.8 ± 2.5	36.9 ± 3.6	33.3 ± 2.4	37.17 ± 3.12
SBP (mmHg)	127.6 ± 12.7	136.7 ± 17.1	123 ± 11.1	138.4 ± 15.4
DBP(mmHg)	83.9 ± 7.1	89.2 ± 9.7	84 ± 7.3	91.39 ± 10.67
FG(mg/dl)	90.7 ± 16.0	111.8 ± 19.2*	95.2 ± 11.2	136 ± 33.1*
TG(mg/dl)	136.3 ± 33.1	198.1 ± 58.6*	175.2 ± 52	155.29 ± 45.65
HDL(mg/dl)	44.2 ± 8.2	41.9 ± 8.3	44.6 ± 8.8	41.73 ± 8.98

\*p<0.05 in comparison to subclinical hypothyroidism by student test

In overt hypothyroid case  $fT_3$  is negatively correlated with systolic blood pressure, fasting glucose triglyceride level and HDL levels.  $T_3$  negatively correlated with systolic blood pressure and HDL-C level in subclinical hypothyroid group. Results in Table 5

Table 5 : Correlation coefficient (r) of  $fT_3$  with components of Metabolic syndrome

	Overt Hypothyroid		Subclinical Hypothyroid	
	r	P value	r	P value
WC (inch)	-0.338	0.03*	-0.269	0.04*
SBP (mmHg)	-0.008	0.951	-0.148	0.268
DBP(mmHg)	0.034	0.796	0.062	0.643
FG(mg/dl)	-0.177	0.176	0.025	0.851
TG(mg/dl)	-0.174	0.184	-0.023	0.864
HDL-C(mg/dl)	-0.025	0.849	-0.196	0.141

$fT_4$  is negatively correlated with waist circumference, fasting glucose, triglycerides and HDL levels in overt hypothyroid group. Similarly in subclinical group there is negative correlation with waist circumference and systolic blood pressure. Result in Table 6.

Table 6 : Correlation coefficient (r) of fT<sub>4</sub> with components of Metabolic syndrome

	Overt Hypothyroid		Subclinical Hypothyroid	
	r	P value	r	P value
WC (inch)	-0.0845	0.518	-0.061	0.735
SBP (mmHg)	0.143	0.276	-0.137	0.305
DBP(mmHg)	0.063	0.633	0.056	0.675
FG(mg/dl)	-0.069	0.599	0.044	0.743
TG(mg/dl)	-0.046	0.725	0.177	0.184
HDL-C(mg/dl)	-0.192	0.141	0.044	0.743

#### IV. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION

- In the present study females hypothyroid cases have more prevalence of Metabolic syndrome {n=45 (38.4%)}, than male hypothyroid cases {24 (20%)}. Hence it will be worthwhile to screen female patients with hypothyroidism, for risk of metabolic syndrome.
- Highest prevalence of metabolic syndrome in hypothyroid patient was in 40-49 years of age group {total n=22, cases of metabolic syndrome is n=16 (72%)}. This is also the age group where there is highest risk of subclinical hypothyroidism.
- The prevalence of Metabolic Syndrome is comparable in overt hypothyroid cases {56% (n=34)} and subclinical hypothyroid cases {60% (n=35)}. Hence this warrants the intensive screening of subclinical hypothyroid group.
- TSH values were high in metabolic syndrome group ( $14.6 \pm 5.42$  mIU/L) in comparison to non metabolic syndrome group ( $11.5 \pm 4.8$  mIU/L) in both the thyroid groups. Therefore patients with higher TSH in subclinical hypothyroidism are not more risk of developing metabolic syndrome.
- When components of metabolic syndromes were compared, overt hypothyroid group had significantly elevated triglyceride levels ( $198.1 \pm 58.6$  mg/dl) than subclinical hypothyroid group ( $155.29 \pm 45.65$  mg/dl) and subclinical hypothyroid group had significantly elevated fasting glucose ( $136 \pm 33.1$  mg/dl) as compared to overt hypothyroid group ( $111.8 \pm 19.2$  mg/dl). Hence it can be made out that subclinical patents are at higher risk of metabolic syndrome as they also had greater mean of abdominal obesity, and diastolic blood pressure.
- TSH had significant positive correlation with fasting glucose ( $r=0.337$ ,  $p=0.009$ ), diastolic blood pressure ( $p = 0.049$ ) and triglycerides level ( $p=0.40$ ) in overt hypothyroid cases. In subclinical cases TSH is negatively correlated with fasting glucose and HDL-C levels and significant positive correlation with diastolic blood pressure.
- fT<sub>3</sub> had significant negative correlation with abdominal obesity in both overt and subclinical hypothyroid group and no significant correlation was found between fT<sub>4</sub> and any of the components of metabolic syndrome.
- The – HOMA-IR (insulin resistance) is comparable is overt ( $5.38 \pm 3.4$ ) and subclinical hypothyroid ( $6.27 \pm 3.87$ ) groups. Therefore screening and treatment of subclinical hypothyroids may be warranted due to its adverse effect on glucose metabolism Hence the fact that insulin resistance was similar in both thyroid groups where there is significant difference in the levels of thyroid hormones indicate that thyroid hormone per se may not be responsible for this phenomenon.
- Elevated triglyceride is the most prevalent (81%) component of metabolic syndrome in all thyroid patients of present study. Hence hypertriglyceridemia on routine evaluation may warrants screening for other components of metabolic syndrome.
- There is a significant correlation ( $p= 0.03$ ) between waist circumference and triglyceride levels. It is the visceral fat which is responsible for hypertriglyceridemia. Hence it can be concluded that those having high TG levels and high waist circumference, have visceral adiposity. Therefore screening for other parameters of metabolic syndrome may be warranted as visceral adipose tissue causes the most metabolic derangements.

The Various results conclude that a significantly deep association exists between Thyroid dysfunction and Metabolic Syndrome.

#### REFERENCES RÉFÉRENCES REFERENCIAS

- Douyon L, Schteingart DE. Effect of obesity and starvation on thyroid hormone, growth hormone and cortisol secretion Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 2002; 31:173-89.
- Adsani H, Hoffer LJ, silva JE. Resting energy expenditure is sensitive to small dose change in patients with chronic thyroid hormone replacement. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1997; 92:118-25.
- Fommei E, Iervasi G. The role of thyroid hormone in blood pressure homeostasis: evidence from short-term hypothyroidism in humans. J clin Endocrinol Meta 2002; 87:1996-99

4. Franklin JA- The management of hyperthyroidism. *N Eng J Med* 1994; 330: 19-44.
5. Wang C, Crapo LM. The epidemiology of thyroid disease and implications for screening. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am.* 1997; 26:189-218.
6. Bauer MS' Whybrow PC. The effect of changing thyroid function on cyclic effective illness in human subjects. *Am J psychiatry* 1986; 143:633-36.
7. Massoudi MS' Meilahn EN, orchard TJ et al. Prevalence of thyroid antibodies among healthy-middle-aged women. *Ann of Epidemiology* 1995;5:22-23.
8. Sakata S, Matsuda M, Ogawa T, et al. Prevalence of thyroid hormone autoantibodies in healthy subjects. *Clin Endocrinol* 1994; 41:365-70.
9. McDermott MT, Ridgway EC. Subclinical hypothyroidism is mild thyroid failure and should be treated. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2001; 86:4585-90.
10. Surk SMI, Ocampo E. Subclinical thyroid disease. *Am J Med* 1996;100:217-23
11. Goswami b, Gupta VK, Mallika V. Evaluation of lipid profile in hypothyroid patients. Our experience. *Thyroid Res Pract* 2008; 5:43-7.
12. Razvi S, Ingoe L, Keeka G, Oates C, McMillan C, Weaver JU. The beneficial effect of L-thyroxin on cardiovascular risk factors, endothelial function, and quality of life in subclinical hypothyroidism: randomized, crossover trial *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2007; 92:1715-23.
13. Cooper DS. Subclinical hypothyroidism. *N Engl J Med.* 2001; 345(4):260-265.
14. Hollowell JG, Staehling NW, Flanders WD, et al. Serum TSH, T(4), and thyroid antibodies in the United States population (1988 to 1994): National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES III). *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2002; 87:489-99.
15. Fatourechi V. Subclinical hypothyroidism: when to treat, when to watch, consultant. 2004; 44:533-39.
16. Surks MI, Hollowell JG. Age-specific distribution of serum thyrotropin and antithyroid antibodies in the US population: implications for the prevalence of subclinical hypothyroidism. *J Clin endocrinol Metab.* 2007; 92:4575-82.
17. Chu JW, Crapo LM. The treatment of subclinical hypothyroidism is seldom necessary. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2001; 86(10):4591-99.
18. Fatourechi V, Klee GG, Grebe SK, et al. Effects of reducing the upper limit of normal TSH values [letter]. *JAMA*, 2003; 290(24):3195-96.



GLOBAL JOURNAL OF MEDICAL RESEARCH: F  
DISEASES

Volume 15 Issue 3 Version 1.0 Year 2015

Type: Double Blind Peer Reviewed International Research Journal

Publisher: Global Journals Inc. (USA)

Online ISSN: 2249-4618 & Print ISSN: 0975-5888

## Prevalence of Cervical Cancer in Developing Country: Pakistan

By Rubina Mukhtar (MCPS), Rubaida Mehmood (MSc), Shahida Parveen (FCPS),  
Mukhtar Hussain (FCPS) & M. Arif (MS)

**Abstract- Objective:** To find the prevalence of cervical carcinoma as seen at Multan Institute of Nuclear Medicine and Radiotherapy (MINAR), Pakistan.

**Methodology:** This retrospective descriptive study was conducted at the Multan institute or Nuclear Medicine and radiotherapy (MINAR) for a period of five years. The clinical records of all patients diagnosed with carcinoma of the cervix were reviewed with regard to sociodemographic and reproductive parameters. Frequency of Ca -cervix and stage of disease at the time of presentation were recorded. The data was collected on pre-designed Performa and analysed Statistically.

**Results:** There were a total of 537 cases presented at MINAR during the study period. Presenting symptoms (PS) were irregular vaginal bleeding (IVB) in 78% patients including intermenstrual (IMB), post menopausal bleeding (PMB), epimenohrea and post coital bleeding (PCB). Vaginal discharge was PS in 29% while pelvic pain was PS in only 3% patients. Squamous cell carcinoma corresponds to 460 (86.5%), adeno carcinoma to 55 (10.8%) cases and Poorly differentiated/other rare Tumours 22 (4%). Only 102(19%) cases were in Stage Ib, while 247 (46%) were in Stages IIa and Stage IIb respectively, 118 (22%) cases were in Stages IIIa and Stage IIIb whilst 57 (10.8%) cases were in advanced stage (IV).

**Keywords:** cervical cancer, prevalence, stage at diagnosis.

**GJMR-F Classification :** NLMC Code: QZ 20.5



Strictly as per the compliance and regulations of:



# Prevalence of Cervical Cancer in Developing Country: Pakistan

Rubina Mukhtar (MCPS) <sup>α</sup>, Rubaida Mehmood (MSc) <sup>σ</sup>, Shahida Parveen (FCPS) <sup>ρ</sup>, Mukhtar Hussain (FCPS) <sup>ω</sup> & M. Arif (MS) <sup>¥</sup>

**Abstract- Objective:** To find the prevalence of cervical carcinoma as seen at Multan Institute of Nuclear Medicine and Radiotherapy (MINAR), Pakistan.

**Methodology:** This retrospective descriptive study was conducted at the Multan institute of Nuclear Medicine and radiotherapy (MINAR) for a period of five years. The clinical records of all patients diagnosed with carcinoma of the cervix were reviewed with regard to sociodemographic and reproductive parameters. Frequency of Ca -cervix and stage of disease at the time of presentation were recorded. The data was collected on pre-designed Performa and analysed Statistically.

**Results :** There were a total of 537 cases presented at MINAR during the study period. Presenting symptoms (PS) were irregular vaginal bleeding (IVB) in 78% patients including intermenstrual (IMB), post menopausal bleeding (PMB), epimenohrea and post coital bleeding (PCB). Vaginal discharge was PS in 29% while pelvic pain was PS in only 3% patients. Squamous cell carcinoma corresponds to 460 (86.5%), adeno carcinoma to 55 (10.8%) cases and Poorly differentiated/other rare Tumours 22 (4%). Only 102(19%) cases were in Stage Ib, while 247 (46%) were in Stages IIa and Stage IIb respectively, 118 (22%) cases were in Stages IIIa and Stage IIIb whilst 57 (10.8%) cases were in advanced stage (IV).

**Conclusion:** Squamous cell carcinoma accounted for 86.5% of cases with mean age of 51 years, most patients 74.98% presented in stage II, III and IV resulting in high morbidity and mortality. No patient was diagnosed at stage 1a that is because of lack of screening programmes and public awareness. Diagnosis at early stage needs implementation of large scale educational and screening programme on national level to save the lives of Pakistani women.

**Keywords:** cervical cancer, prevalence, stage at diagnosis.

## I. INTRODUCTION

Cervical cancer is the second most common cancer among women and the third leading cause of cancer deaths among women globally. The global burden of cervical cancer is 500,000 cases

**Author α:** MCPS Radiology, SMO, MINAR Cancer hospital Multan.  
e-mail: binamukhtar@hotmail.com

**Author σ:** Sr. Scientist at MINAR cancer hospital Multan.  
e-mail: rubaidamehmood@hotmail.com

**Author ρ:** Associate professor of Obstetric & gynecology NHM Multan.  
e-mail: shahidawahla@hotmail.com

**Author ω:** Professor of paediatric surgery CHC multan.

**Author ¥:** Senior scientist MINAR cancer hospital Multan.  
e-mail: dashcom@hotmail.com

every year, with 270,000 women dying of it globally — that is one death every two minutes. Approximately 80 per cent of deaths related to cervical cancer occur in developing countries such as Pakistan. Typically in Pakistan, a woman would be susceptible to this cancer from marriage onwards, with commencement of sexual relations. But unfortunately studies have shown that a lack of awareness — of both the disease as well as availability of the preventive vaccine — is steadily increasing the incidence of cervical cancer in Pakistan (1).

Cervical cancer is an important public health problem for adult women in developing countries in South and Central America, sub-Saharan Africa, and south and south-east Asia, where it is the most or second most common cancer among women. The vast majority of cervical cancer cases are caused by infection with certain subtypes of human papilloma virus (HPV), a sexually transmitted virus that infects cells and may result in precancerous lesions and invasive cancer. (2)

Cervical cancer remained the most common genital female malignancy and it is the second most common malignancy in women, after breast cancer. (3-6)

Invasive cervical cancer is second only to breast cancer as a leading cause of worldwide cancer-related mortality in women. (7-8).

The highest incidences of disease tend to occur in populations that have low screening rates combined with a high background prevalence of human papillomavirus (HPV) infection and relatively liberal attitudes toward sexual behavior. (4) Cervical cancer was once one of the most common causes of cancer death for American women. Between the years 1955 and 1992, the cervical cancer death rate declined by almost 70%. The main reason for this change was the increased use of the Pap test for early detection of this disease (3,4) but still it is one of major causes of cancer related morbidity in developing countries due to lack of screening programs.

## II. MATERIALS AND METHODS:

It is a hospital based retrospective study conducted to evaluate trends of cervical cancer in terms of the presentation, outcomes and other epidemiological factors. All Patients with tissue

diagnosis of cervical cancer reported to our hospital during last 5 years were evaluated for their ages of presentation, menarche, marriage, menopause and clinical presentation, stage of disease their management and outcome.

### III. RESULTS

Total 537 patients were enrolled in last 5 years. Mean age of presentation was 48 years with 70% patients presenting at the age of more than 40 years and 30% less than 40 years. 86% patients have mean age of menarche 13 years with minimum age of 11 years. Majority of them (88%) were married at age of less than 18 years. Patients presenting in premenopausal age were only 31% while 69% presented in post menopausal age. Presenting symptoms (PS) were irregular vaginal bleeding (IVB) in 78% patients including intermenstrual (IMB), post menopausal (PMB), epimenohrea and post coital bleeding (PCB). Vaginal discharge was PS in 29% while pelvic pain was PS in only 3% patients. Thorough clinical examination, routine investigations including complete blood counts (CBC), complete urine examination (CUE), blood sugar (BS), ultrasonography (USG) and computed tomography (CT) scan was done. Disease was staged according to FIGO staging system. None of them was diagnosed in stage 1a. 19% cases diagnosed at stage 1b, 46% at stage 11, 40.5% of which were in stage 11b and only 5.5% were in stage 11a. Total patients in stage 111 were 22 %, 3% in stage 111a and 19% in 111b. 10.8 % of patients diagnosed in stage 1Va but none presented in stage 1Vb. Squamous cell carcinoma (Ca) was the histopathology in 86.5% and adeno carcinoma in 10.8% patients. Remaining was poorly differentiated ca. Only 22% patients had Total abdominal hysterectomy at the time of presentation. Management of these patients included combination of external radiotherapy (ERT) and Intra cavitory brachytherapy. 100% resolution of mass was achieved in 27% patients. Mortality was 8% due to renal failure and intestinal complications of radiotherapy.

### IV. DISCUSSION

Cervical cancer is an important cause of morbidity and mortality among females worldwide, more so in developing countries. In parts of the developing world, cervical cancer is the major cause of death in women of reproductive age (8).

The incidence of invasive cervical cancers in economically disadvantaged and developing countries is 78% of worldwide incidence. (3-4, 7) This disease accounts for 15% of all cancers in women. The associated lifetime risk of invasive cervical cancer in such countries is about 3%. In developed countries, the disease accounts for 4.4% of all new cancers in women, and it is associated with a lifetime risk of about 1.1%.

This disparity is attributed to the lack of effective screening programs and awareness in developing countries.

Preinvasive disease is asymptomatic and is usually detected during routine cervical cytological screening. Early invasive disease may not be associated with any symptoms and is also usually detected during screening examinations. Approximately 20% of patients who have invasive cervical cancer are asymptomatic when the disease is diagnosed by means of a Pap smear or routine clinical examination (6, 7). Approximately 80-90% of patients with cervical cancer experience a form of abnormal vaginal bleeding such as postmenopausal bleeding, irregular menses, heavy menstrual flow, painless metrorrhagia, or postcoital bleeding. In some case series and in geographic regions where endometrial cancer is not common, postmenopausal bleeding is the most common presenting symptom of cervical cancer. Abnormal vaginal discharge is a presenting symptom in about 10% of patients; the discharge may be watery, purulent, or mucoid. Pelvic or abdominal pain and urinary or rectal symptoms occur in advanced cases (6). Pelvic pain may result from loco regionally invasive disease or from coexistent pelvic inflammatory disease. Flank pain may be a symptom of hydronephrosis, often complicated by pyelonephritis. The triad of sciatic pain, leg edema, and hydronephrosis is almost always associated with extensive pelvic wall involvement by tumor. Patients with very advanced tumors may have hematuria or incontinence from a vesicovaginal fistula caused by direct extension of tumor to the bladder. External compression of the rectum by a massive primary tumor may cause constipation, but the rectal mucosa is rarely involved at initial diagnosis.

FIGO has defined the most widely accepted staging system for carcinomas of the cervix.(9) FIGO stage is based on careful clinical examination and the results of specific radiologic studies and procedures.

Between 80% and 90% of cervical carcinomas are squamous cell carcinomas. A number of studies suggest that the incidence of one subtype of cervical cancer, cervical adenocarcinoma, has been increasing, particularly among women in their 20s and 30s. (10-11)

Several investigators have reported similar survival rates for patients with squamous carcinomas and those with adenocarcinoma.(12-14) However, many other investigators have drawn the opposite conclusion, the 5-year survival rate was lower for patients with adenocarcinoma than for patients with squamous cell carcinoma. The difference in survival rates between squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma was found mainly in stage I and stage II, where radiotherapy was used as the primary treatment. We speculate that this difference in survival rates between cervical adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma was due to the relative ineffectiveness of radiotherapy as a

primary treatment in cases of adenocarcinoma, (15) noting unusual high pelvic relapse rates in patients treated with surgery for adenocarcinomas and poorer survival rates in patients treated with surgery or radiation for adenocarcinomas.(16)

The prognosis of cervical cancer is relatively good in low-risk countries, with a reported 5-year survival rate of 72% for all stages combined(7). The 5-year survival rate is reported about 48% in developing countries, where patients are likely to seek medical attention when the cancer is more advanced (3, 7, 17). Five years survival rate for early invasive cancer is 92% and that for pre-invasive cancer is nearly 100%(7).

In our study 5 year survival rate is 52% which more or less corresponds to data available for under developed countries but unluckily no patient was diagnosed in early or Preinvasive stage that is all because of lack of proper screening programs that requires man power of skilled personals and a lot of budget. The main cause of its failure is lack of resources in developing countries.

For developing countries, HPV vaccination can have important implications for improvement in women's health and lowering of mortality from cervical cancer. Obstacles such as lack of routine and organized screening, advanced presentation of cervical cancer and minimal physician visits by many women make HPV vaccination an attractive adjunct in the fight against cervical cancer. The vaccine must also be made more cost effective, affordable and accessible to the public in order to realize the envisaged impact of the vaccine in the developing countries.(18)

V. CONCLUSION

Presentation and etiological factors of cervical cancer are same in developing countries as in developed countries but early diagnosis and management of cervical cancer is a major problem and reason for poor out come and low 5 years survival rates. This needs nationwide awareness and screening programs that can be made successful with co-ordination of non governmental organizations working for women health services.

Table I : Demographic characteristics and symptoms

Characteristic	No & %
Symptoms	
Intermenstural bleeding	200(38%)
Postmenopausal bleeding	188(35%)
Epimenorhea	14(2.7%)
Post coital bleeding	14(2.7%)
Vaginal Discharge	15(2.9%)
Pelvic Pain	14(2.7%)
Histopathology	
Sq. cell Ca	460(86.50%)
Adeno Ca	55(10.80%)
Poorly differentiated/other rare Tumours	22(10%)

The results are expressed in numbers and percentage.

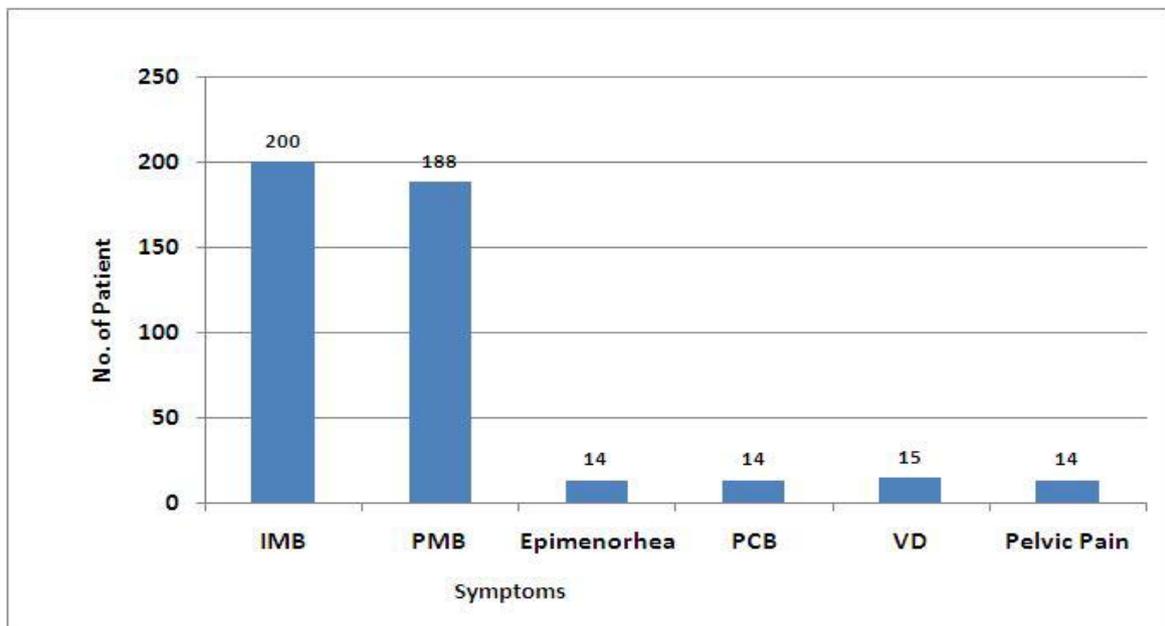


Figure : Clinical Presentation of Patients

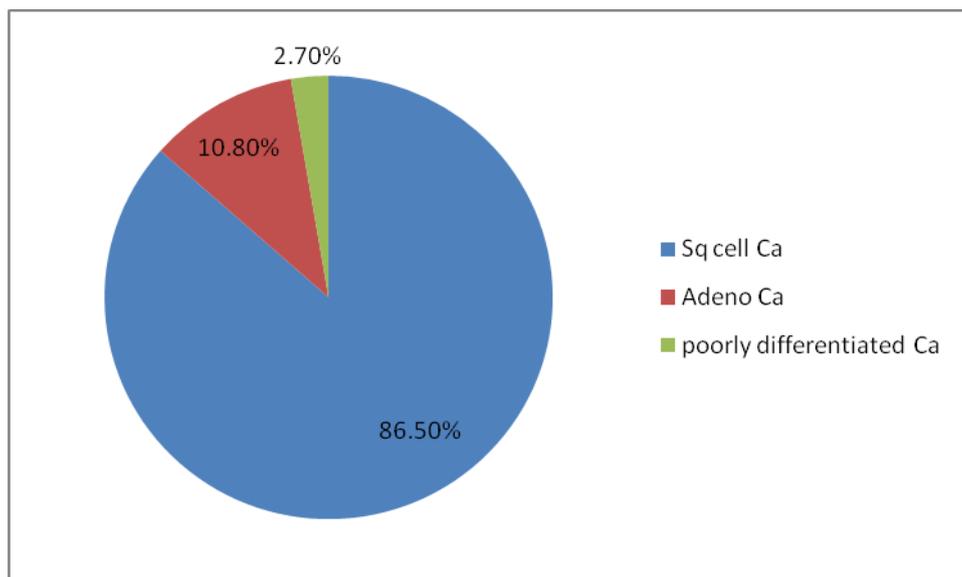


Figure : Stages of carcinoma of cervix

Incidence of different types of cervical cancer

Sr. No	Stage of disease	No. of Patients	Percentage
1-	Ib	102	19%
2-	Ila	217	46%
	Ilb	30	
3-	111a	15	22%
	111b	103	
4-	IV (all IVa)	57	10.8%

## REFERENCES RÉFÉRENCES REFERENCIAS

- Cervical cancer alarm in Pakistan. internewsreport (Mevarick Pakitancom). Saturday 13Dec 2014.
- Walboomers J, et al. . Human papillomavirus is a necessary cause of invasive cervical cancer worldwide. . Journal of Pathology. 1999;51: 268.
- Parkin DM, Pisani P, Ferlay J. Global cancer statistics. CA Cancer J Clin. 1999 Jan-Feb;49(1):33-64, 1.
- Baowen Zheng CC, Anxiang Wei, Han Ran, Dong Liu, Wenling Yue, etc. Research of cervical cytology screening in diagnosis of 370,000 cases with cervical lesion in Guangdong. The Chinese-German Journal of Clinical Oncology 2002/2010;Volume 1 / 9.
- Behtash N, Mehrdad N. Cervical cancer: screening and prevention. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2006;7(4):683-6.
- Edmonds DK, Dewhurst J. Dewhurst's textbook of obstetrics and gynaecology for postgraduates: Blackwell Science Inc; 1999.
- Stehman FB PC, Kurman RJ, Thigpen JT. Principles and Practice of Gynecologic Oncology. . Pa: ; 1997. 2 nd ed: Lippincott-Raven; 1997.
- Janicek MF AH. Cervical cancer: prevention, diagnosis, and therapeutics. CA Cancer J Clin 2001 Mar-Apr 2(51):92-114.
- Benedet J OF, Maisonneuve P, et al. Carcinoma of the cervix uteri. J Epidemiol Biostat. 1998;3:5-34.
- CR SHTMQCK. The rising incidence of adenocarcinoma relative to squamous cell carcinoma of the uterine cervix in the United States—A 24-year population-based study. Gynecol Oncol. 2000;78:97-105.
- Vizcaino AP MV, Bosch FX, et al. International trends in the incidence of cervical cancer. I. Adenocarcinoma and adenosquamous cell carcinomas. . Int J Cancer 1998;75:536.
- Waldenstom. A.C HG. Survival of patients with adenocarcinoma of the uterine cervix in western Sweden. Int J Gynecol Cancer. 1999;9:18-23.
- Kilgore LC SS, Gore H, et al. Analysis of prognostic features in adenocarcinoma of the cervix. Gynecol Oncol 1988;31:137.
- Grigsby PW PC, Kuske RR, et al. . Adenocarcinoma of the uterine cervix: lack of evidence for a poor prognosis. Radiother Oncol 1988;12:289.
- Ruey-Jien Chen Y-HL, Chi-An Chen, Su-Cheng Huang, Song-Nan Chow, Chang-Yao Hsieh. Influence of Histologic Type and Age on Survival Rates for Invasive Cervical Carcinoma in Taiwan. Gynecologic Oncology. 1999;73(2):184-90.
- Chen RJ LY, Chen CA, et al. Influence of histologic type and age on survival rates for invasive cervical carcinoma in Taiwan. Gynecol Oncol 1999;73:184.

17. Khan MS; Raja FY IG, Tahir F, Subhan F, Kazi BM, et. Pap smear screening for precancerous conditions of the cervical cancer. . Pak J Med Res 2005(44):111-3. .
18. Khan MS; Raja FY IG TF, Subhan F, Kazi BM, et. Pap smear screening for precancerous conditions of the cervical cancer. . Pak J Med Res 2005;44:111-3.

This page is intentionally left blank



GLOBAL JOURNAL OF MEDICAL RESEARCH: F  
DISEASES

Volume 15 Issue 3 Version 1.0 Year 2015

Type: Double Blind Peer Reviewed International Research Journal

Publisher: Global Journals Inc. (USA)

Online ISSN: 2249-4618 & Print ISSN: 0975-5888

## Lipid Profile Alterations in the Metabolic Syndrome the Latest Biochemical and Physiological Aspect

By Dr. Shazia Nazir, Dr. Ashfaq Ul Hassan, Dr. R. Aziz, Dr. Rifat & Dr. Farhana Ahad

*SKIMS Medical College Srinagar, India*

**Abstract-** Cardiovascular and cerebrovascular complications form a major challenge in the management of the The Metabolic Syndrome. The risks of development are compounded by simultaneous occurrence of Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), dyslipid emias, hypertension and other medical conditions. The significant increase in morbidity, mortality along with premature death and disabilities resulting from these conditions in both developed and developing is a matter of great concern. The article makes a microanalysis of Biochemical alterations associated with dyslipidemias in cases of metabolic syndrome.

**Keywords:** *apolipoproteins, esterfication, syndrome, circumference, waist, glucocorticoids, lipase.*

**GJMR-F Classification :** *NLMC Code: WD 200.5.H8*



*Strictly as per the compliance and regulations of:*



© 2015. Dr. Shazia Nazir, Dr. Ashfaq Ul Hassan, Dr. R. Aziz, Dr. Rifat & Dr. Farhana Ahad. This is a research/review paper, distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial 3.0 Unported License <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/3.0/>), permitting all non-commercial use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

# Lipid Profile Alterations in the Metabolic Syndrome the Latest Biochemical and Physiological Aspect

Dr. Shazia Nazir <sup>α</sup>, Dr. Ashfaq Ul Hassan <sup>σ</sup>, Dr. R. Aziz <sup>ρ</sup>, Dr. Rifat <sup>ω</sup> & Dr. Farhana Ahad <sup>¥</sup>

**Abstract-** Cardiovascular and cerebrovascular complications form a major challenge in the management of the The Metabolic Syndrome. The risks of development are compounded by simultaneous occurrence of Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), dyslipidemia, hypertension and other medical conditions. The significant increase in morbidity, mortality along with premature death and disabilities resulting from these conditions in both developed and developing is a matter of great concern. The article makes a microanalysis of Biochemical alterations associated with dyslipidemias in cases of metabolic syndrome.

**Keywords:** apolipoproteins, esterification, syndrome, circumference, waist, glucocorticoids, lipase.

## I. TEXT

The World Health Organization (WHO) developed a definition in 1998 stating that individual need to show evidence of insulin resistance and, at least 2 of 4 factors should be present namely hypertension, hyperlipidemia, obesity and microalbuminuria. In 2001, the National cholesterol Education program (NCEP) Adult Treatment panel (ATP III) suggested another definition, according to which at least 3 of 5 factors should be present for diagnosis of the Metabolic Syndrome and the five factors/components are the following: increased waist circumference, hypertriglyceridemia, low high density lipoprotein (HDL)-cholesterol, hypertension (130/85mmHg) and fasting glucose of 110 mg/dl or high.

Obesity, insulin resistance, physical inactivity, advanced age and hormonal imbalance have been suggested as the underlying risk factors for the development of metabolic syndrome.

The metabolic syndrome is not a new syndrome. It was first described in the 1920 by Kylin, a Swedish physician, as the association of high blood pressure (hypertension), high blood glucose. (hyperglycemia) and gout. Advances in the 1970s and

early 1980s expanded our understanding of the link of these to coronary heart disease, even in the absence of diabetes, and linked the metabolic risk factors to atherosclerosis.<sup>1</sup> In 1988, G.M. Reaven grouped several metabolic disorders together as syndrome X and proposed that insulin resistance was the underlying event explaining dyslipidemia, high blood pressure, and diabetes, and this characterization was further examined by DeFronzo and Ferranini in 1991. These factors were then observed to be influenced by both genetic and environmental factors.<sup>2</sup> Many other names were proposed for this syndrome, including the plurimetabolic syndrome (1988), the deadly quartet (1989), syndrome X plus (1991), metabolic syndrome X, the metabolic syndrome, the insulin resistance syndrome (1991) In 2001, the National cholesterol EduScatoin program (NCEP) suggested another definition for the Metabolic syndrome, which requires at least 3 of 5 factors to be present for definition of the Metabolic syndrome<sup>3</sup>. This definition, is easier to use in clinical practice because glucose tolerance testing, insulin concentration measurement and microalbuminuria testing are not required. Today, the most common definitions are the (WHO version, revised) International Diabetes Federation definition of 2005 and the revised NCEP ATP definition of 2005.<sup>4</sup>

Table 1 : WHO Definition of metabolic syndrome

Hypertension	Raised arterial pressure(140/90 mmHg) or antihypertensive medication
Dyslipidemia	Raised plasma triglyceride(>1.7 mmol/L) or low HDL cholesterol(<0.9 mmol/L) in men and (<1.0mmol/L) in women
Central or general obesity	Waist to hip ratio >0.90 in men: >0.85 in women or BMI>30Kg/m <sup>2</sup>
Microalbuminuria	Urinary albumin excretion rate >20ug/min or albumin: creatinine ratio>30 mg/g

Author <sup>α</sup>: MBBS MD Tutor Department of Biochemistry SKIMS Medical College Srinagar, India. e-mail: drshaziayasir@hotmail.com

Author <sup>σ</sup>: MBBS, MS. Consultant Department of Anatomy SKIMS Medical College Srinagar, India. e-mail: ashhassan@rediffmail.com

Author <sup>ρ</sup>: Assoc Prof Department of Biochemistry. SKIMS Medical College Srinagar.

Author <sup>ω</sup>: PhD Tutor Department of Biochemistry SKIMS Medical College Srinagar, India.

Author <sup>¥</sup>: MBBS MD Consultant Department of Physiology. SKIMS Medical College Srinagar.

**Table 2 :** National Cholesterol education program (NCEP) Adult Treatment Panel III (ATPIII)

Risk factors	Defining levels*
Abdominal obesity (waist circumference) Men Women	>102 cm(> 40 inch) >88cm (> 35 inches)
Triglycerides	>150 mg/dl
HDL Cholesterol Men Women	<40mg/dl <50mg/dl
Blood Pressure	>130/85 mm Hg
Fasting Glucose	>110 mg/dl

**Metabolic syndrome:** diagnosis is established when >3 of these risk factors are present

## II. NORMAL PHYSIOLOGY OF LIPID TRANSPORT

### a) Transport of dietary lipid (Exogenous pathway)

It is the transport of lipid from intestine to liver. Chylomicrons transport the dietary lipid from intestine to liver. In diet the major lipids are triglyceride and cholesterol. Cholesterol is absorbed as such in proximal small intestine and is esterified to cholesteryl ester (ChE). Triglycerides are hydrolysed by lipases to glycerol and fatty acids which are absorbed in intestine. Inside intestinal cells triglyceride is synthesized by fatty acids. Chylomicrons are synthesized in the small intestine that contain triglyceride, cholesteryl ester, cholesterol, phospholipids, and apoprotein B-48 (apo B-48) and apo-A. These chylomicrons are secreted in the intestinal lymph and reach the systemic circulation via thoracic duct. In the circulation apo E and apo C are transferred to chylomicrons by HDL, so now chylomicrons contain apo A, apo B-48, apo- E, & apo-C. In the circulation, triglycerides of chylomicrons are hydrolysed by lipoprotein lipase (LPL) present on endothelial cells of vessels of skeletal muscles, adipose tissue and heart, but not in liver. The released fatty acids are utilized locally by these tissues. Adipose tissue uses these fatty acids to store them as TGs and heart and skeletal muscle use them as source of energy. Thus, function of chylomicrons is to transport exogenous (dietary) triglyceride to adipose tissue (for storage), heart (for energy) and muscle (for energy). The chylomicron particle progressively shrinks in size by action of LPL and, cholesterol, phospholipids, apo-A and apo C are transferred to HDL, creating chylomicron remnants that contains more cholesterol, less triglycerides, apo-E & apo B-48.

### b) Transport of Hepatic lipids (Endogenous pathway)

VLDL is synthesized in liver that contains high triglyceride, ChE, cholesterol, phospholipid and Apo B-100. (VLDL particles resemble chylomicrons in composition except that VLDL contains Apo B-100 instead of Apo B-48). VLDL particles are secreted in the

plasma and as with chylomicron, Apo E and Apo C are transferred from HDL to VLDL. Now VLDL contains Apo B-100, Apo E and Apo C. In plasma, triglycerides of VLDL are hydrolysed by same lipoprotein lipase and apo C is transferred to HDL and the remnants are called IDL. 40-60% of IDL is removed by liver via LDL receptor mediated endocytosis, this process requires Apo E which acts as ligand for LDL receptors. Remaining IDL is remodeled by hepatic lipase which hydrolyzes more triglyceride to form LDL that contains maximum cholesterol. 70% of LDL is removed by liver via LDL receptor and 30% is utilized by peripheral tissues as a source of cholesterol.

### c) The Alterations in Metabolic Syndrome

The genetic and environmental factors play a major role in metabolic and cardiovascular of obesity. The way genetic factors modifying the effects of obesity are largely unknown. Also there are the subjects who are defined as obese by various guidelines but do not have insulin resistance and conversely insulin resistance can be present in lean individuals. Abdominal obesity is related, to greater risk of cardiovascular events and T2DM. Initially waist: hip ratio was considered but the current clinical approach to Metabolic Syndrome uses sex specific waist circumference to define the body mass component contributing to increase in cardiovascular events, greater fasting insulin levels and increased insulin resistance. Waist-circumference is a general index of central fat mass and it reflects both abdominal subcutaneous adipose tissue (SAT) and abdominal visceral adipose tissue (VAT) and is major determinant of metabolic and cardiovascular complication of obesity<sup>5</sup>. Visceral obesity may partly be a marker of a dysmetabolic state and partly a cause of the metabolic syndrome. Although waist circumference is a better marker of abdominal fat accumulation than the body mass index, an elevated waistline alone is not sufficient to diagnose visceral obesity and have proposed that an elevated fasting triglyceride concentration could represent, when waist circumference is increased, a simple clinical marker of excess visceral/ectopic fat.<sup>6</sup> For the diagnosis of abdominal obesity three simple measurements, namely height, weight and maximal abdominal girth should be made on all patients. The body mass index (BMI); 18.5-25 kg/m<sup>2</sup> is normal, 25-30 kg/m<sup>2</sup> is overweight or >30 kg/m<sup>2</sup> is obese. According to the ATPIII criteria the waist circumference of >35 inches (88 cm) for women, >40 inches (102cm) for men] defines excess abdominal adiposity. The weight reduction diet is usually choice for the obese patient but the most common approach for overweight person who may have the Metabolic syndrome is a balanced calorie diet. Hypothyroidism is a major cause of secondary dyslipidemia, the cause of which resides in a decrease of cholesterol excretion and in a marked increase in apo

B lipoproteins because of a decreased catabolism and turnover by a reduced number of LDL receptors on the liver cell surface. LDL can be removed from plasma by receptors, which are regulated at mRNA level by thyroid hormone. Thus increased levels of total and LDL cholesterol are a common finding in hypothyroidism and may represent an increased risk factor for coronary heart disease.<sup>7</sup> Abdominal obesity, due to intra-abdominal adiposity, drives the progression of multiple cardiometabolic risk factors independently of body mass index. This occurs both through altered secretion of adipocyte-derived biologically active substances (adipokines), including free fatty acids, adiponectin, interleukin-6, tumour necrosis factor alpha, and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1, and through exacerbation of insulin resistance and associated cardiometabolic risk factors.<sup>8</sup> The prevalence of abdominal obesity is increasing in western populations, due to a combination of low physical activity and high-energy diets, and also in developing countries, where it is associated with the urbanization of populations. The measurement of waist circumference, together with an additional comorbidity, readily identifies the presence of increased cardiometabolic risk associated with abdominal obesity. For example, 80% men with waist circumference 90 cm and triglycerides (TG) 2 mmol/L were found to have an atherogenic triad of elevated apolipoprotein B, fasting hyperinsulinaemia, and small, dense LDL, which had been strongly associated with adverse cardiovascular outcomes in a previous observational study.<sup>9</sup> Accordingly, measurement of waist circumference should become a standard component of cardiovascular risk evaluation in routine clinical practice. As a simple initial screening approach to distinguish viscerally obese from subcutaneously obese patients, has previously proposed that the simultaneous presence of fasting hypertiglyceridemia and of an increased waist circumference (hypertiglyceridemic waist) could represent a simple clinical phenotype to identify patients with an excess of visceral adipose tissue, with ectopic fat and with the related features of the metabolic syndrome.<sup>10</sup> Lifestyle modification remains the initial intervention of choice for this population, with pharmacological modulation of risk factors where this is insufficiently effective. Looking ahead, the initial results of randomized trials with rimonabant, the first CBI (cannabinoid) receptor blocker, indicate the potential of corrective overactivation of the endogenous endocannabinoid system for simultaneous improvement of multiple cardiometabolic risk factors.<sup>11</sup>

### III. INCREASED TRIGLYCERIDES

Dyslipidemia is widely established as an independent risk factor for CVD. Low HDL Cholesterol and hypertiglyceridemia have been found to be independent and significantly related to myocardial

infarction and stroke in patient with Metabolic syndrome. The dyslipidemia in Metabolic syndrome patient may be caused by combination of overproduction of very low density lipoprotein (VLDL), apoB-100, decreased catabolism of apo B containing particle and increased catabolism of HDL apo-AI particle. In T2DM, insulin resistance and obesity combine to cause hypertriglyceridemia and low HDL-C, due to over production of VLDL. Plasma LDL-C levels are normal in Metabolic syndrome though LDL particles are smaller and denser than normal which may be associated with increased cardiovascular risk. The effects of low HDL-C and high triglyceride levels, are related to greater risk of coronary disease due to variety Of environmental and genetic factors. For instance lower HDL-C levels are formed in cigarette smokers, obese person, sedentary individuals, and androgen or progesterone users. The genetic variants of lipoprotein lipase, hepatic lipase, cholesterol ester transfer protein and peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors have effects on HDL-C and TG levels in population which contributes to the development of Metabolic syndrome.

The primary defect is probably focused in the inability to incorporate, the FFA to triglycerides (TGs) by the adipose tissue (inadequate esterification)<sup>12</sup>. This result is reduced fatty acid trapping and consequent retention by the adipose tissue. The insulin resistance also causes reduced retention of FFA by adipocytes. Both these abnormalities lead to the increased flux of FFA back in the liver. Adipose tissue is a prominent source of cholesteryl ester transfer protein.<sup>13</sup> Cholesteryl ester transfer protein is an important determinant of lipoprotein composition because of its capacity to mediate the transfer of cholesteryl esters from cholesteryl ester rich lipoproteins to TG rich lipoproteins in exchange for TGs.<sup>14</sup> In obese subjects, cholesteryl ester transfer protein activity and mass are increased.<sup>15</sup> Increased flux of FFA from periphery to the liver in increasing resistance state stimulates hepatic TG synthesis which in turn promotes the assembly & secretion of TG containing VLDL<sup>1</sup> as well as apo B production in liver. Under normolipidemic conditions in humans, VLDL secretion is affected by TG and cholesterol availability and recent studies suggest an-association between' cholesterol synthesis and production of smaller-VLDL particles (VLDL2).<sup>16</sup> While insulin suppresses the formation, of large VLDL particles, VLDL receptors does not, have any impact on the production of the smaller VLDL2 fraction n When insulin resistance occurs, the high insulin values make the liver resistant to the inhibitory effects of insulin on VLDL secretion increasing insulin resistance is proposed to be the precursor for two events. in the presence of insulin resistance the visceral adipocytes is more sensitive to the metabolic effect of the lipolytic hormone glucocorticoids and catacholamines. The hormonal lipolytic activity produces an increased release of FFA

into portal system which serves as hepatic substrate to assemble TGs & TG rich VLDL. Secondly increasing JR leads to increased production of apo B as a consequent to increased synthesis & secretion of TG containing VLDL cholesterol particles. The fall off clearance rates is likely to reflect the-rates of lipolysis and could be attributable to a change in lipoprotein lipase activity (decreased in insulin resistance state) and other factors such as the apoC-II content or the apo-CII/CIII ratio (modulators of lipoprotein lipase activity) in VLDL.<sup>17</sup>

In the insulin resistance, LDL levels are usually within normal limit or only mildly raised, however LDL particle is often of abnormal composition (small dense LDL) Hypertriglyceridemia is responsible for abnormal composition.-It has been found that small dense LDL is not seen in hypothyroidism until plasma TG level exceeds 1.5 mmol/L. The elevation of TGs in hypothyroidism is caused by a reduced removal rate of TG from plasma due to a decrease in the activity of hepatic TG lipase. Under these condition large TG rich VLDL (VLDLT) molecules accumulates when VLDL is lyophilized by LPL a population of LDL particle with changed apo B conformation is produced. These particles fail to bind efficiently LDL receptor and so have a prolonged residence time in circulation. By the action of CETP, cholesterol esters are replaced by TG in LDL & HDL particle. TG rich LDL is a good substrate for hepatic lipase that finally generates small dense LDL which is associated with increased cardiovascular risk. Many studies have shown that small, dense LDL particles have proatherogenic properties such as: (a) reduced LDL receptor mediated clearance, (b) increased arterial wall retention,(c) increased susceptibility to oxidation.<sup>19</sup>

#### IV. LOW HDL-CHOLESTEROL

Low HDL-Cholesterol in patient with Metabolic syndrome is often considered as secondary to raised TG. Lipid exchange is taking place between LDL & LDL particles mediated by cholesterol ester transport protein (CETP). These TG rich but cholesterol depleted HDLC is more prone to be catabolized. They undergo hydrolysis of their TGs components and dissociation of their protein component apo-A (the main protein of HDL).<sup>20</sup> There is circumstantial evidence that low HDL-C contributes to increase risk of atherosclerosis in this Condition. There is also evidence that HDL-cholesterol regime-therapy may reduce the risk of atherosclerosis in Met yn.<sup>21,22,23</sup> The dyslipidemia contributing to diagnosis of Metabolic syndrome is defined by estimation of lipid levels after 12 hour fasting in usual healthy state. A low HDL-C level <40 mg/dl in men and <50 mg/dl in female and TG level >150 mg/dl in either sex are the components for the diagnostic of Metabolic syndrome. The complexity of HDL, in terms of both composition and metabolism is striking. It is clear, however, that low

HDL-C levels are a very common characteristic of the dyslipidemia of IR and T2DM. In fact, it may be the most common finding; HDL-C.and apo A-I levels in plasma - can be low even when plasma TG levels are normal. Why are HDL-C and apo A-I levels reduced in individuals with JR and T2DM.

As was the case for LDL, the answer lies mainly, but not completely, with CETP. The reverse cholesterol transport system moves cholesterol from tissues to nascent, cholesterol-poor apo A-I phospholipid discs, where the cholesterol is esterified. Progressive accumulation of CE. (Cholesterol esters) leads to the maturation of the HDL into a spherical lipoprotein that delivers the CE and some of the unesterified cholesterol to the liver. Alternatively, HDL2 particles can participate in the CETP-mediated exchange of their CE for TG in VLDL, VLDL remnants, and chylomicron remnants. The impact of this exchange on reverse cholesterol transport is unclear If the TG rich lipoproteins that receive the CE from HDL are removed by the liver, there may be no effect on reverse cholesterol transport, assuming that delivery of CE via uptake of apo lipoproteins results in delivery of the lipid to the biliary tract with the same efficiency as does delivery via SRB 1. Unfortunately, increased CETP-mediated exchange of HDL CE for TGs is associated with lipolysis of HDL TG by HL, and this produces a small, lipid-depleted HDL that resembles nascent particles. Apo A-I binding to this HDL particle is diminished, causing apo A-I to dissociate from the particle and be cleared more rapidly from the plasma. Thus, fractional catabolism of apo A-I is increased in patients with T2DM, reducing the number of HDL particles in the circulation. Additionally, if the CE-enriched apo B-lipoproteins are not removed by the liver, but rather find their way into the artery wall, then reverse cholesterol transport will have been "short-circuited" and atherogenesis may be accelerated.

There are other metabolic pathways that can also generate low HDL in IR and Metabolic syndrome. IR is associated with increased HL (hormone lipase) activity, which can increase hydrolysis of HDL, TG and generate smaller HDL The potential roles of defective ABCA1-mediated efflux of cellular-free cholesterol, defective LCAT activity, or increased selective delivery of HDL cholesterol ester to hepatocytes as causes of the low HDL levels present in IR are under investigation However, the observation that low HDL-C and apo A-I are frequently present even when TG levels are relatively normal suggests that non-CETP mechanisms are clearly important in the pathogenesis of low HDL-C concentrations in IR.

#### V. CONCLUSION

Elevated triglyceride is the most prevalent (81%) component of metabolic syndrome in all thyroid patients of present study. Hence hypertriglyceridemia on routine

evaluation may warrants screening for other components of metabolic syndrome.

There is a significant correlation ( $p= 0.03$ ) between waist circumference and triglyceride levels. It is the visceral fat which is responsible for hypertriglyceridemia. Hence it can be concluded that those having high TG levels and high waist circumference, have visceral adiposity. Therefore screening for other parameters of metabolic syndrome may be warranted as visceral adipose tissue causes the most metabolic derangements. All the results indicate that lipid profile undergoes a change in metabolic syndrome and in clinical practice the fatal outcomes and complications are directly related to the severity of lipid abnormalities. Hence the change in Lipid Profile can be a prognostic factor for Metabolic Syndrome and the changes should be seriously taken care of and addressed at the earliest.

### REFERENCES RÉFÉRENCES REFERENCIAS

- Shafir E. Animal models of syndrome X. *Current Topics in Diabetes Research* 1993; 12:165-181.
- Lempiainen P et al. Insulin resistance syndrome predicts coronary heart disease events in elderly nondiabetic men. *Circulation* 1999; 100(2): 123-128.
- Executive Summary of the Thyroid Report of National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP). Expert Panel on detection, evaluation and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults. *JAMA* 2001; 285:2486-97.
- Wilson PWF, D'Agostino RB, Parise H, Sullivan L, Meigs JB. The metabolic syndrome as a precursor of cardiovascular disease and type 2 diabetes. *Circulation* 2005; 112:3066-3072.
- Nieves, DJ, Cnop M, Retzlaff B. The atherogenic lipoprotein profile associated with obesity and insulin resistance is largely attributable to intra-abdominal fat. *Diabetes* 2003; 52:17 2-9.
- Ross R, Freeman J, Hudson R, Janssen I. Abdominal obesity, muscle composition, and insulin resistance in premenopausal women. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2002; 87:5044-5051.
- Danese MD, Ladenson PW, Meinert CL, Powe NR. Clinical review 115: effect of thyroxin therapy on serum lipoproteins in patients with mild thyroid failure: a quantitative review of the literature. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2000; 85: 2993-3001
- Wajchenberg BL. Subcutaneous and visceral adipose tissue: their relation to the metabolic syndrome. *Endocr Rev.* 2000; 21:697-738.
- Nieves DJ, Cnop M, Retzlaff B, Walden CE, Brunzell JD, Knopp RH, Kahn SE. The atherogenic lipoprotein profile associated with obesity and insulin resistance is largely attributable to intra-abdominal fat. *Diabetes.* 2003; 52: 172-179
- Lemieux I, Pascot A, Couillard C, Lamarche B, Tchernof A, Almeras N, Bergeron J, Gaudet D, Tremblay G, Prud'homme D, Nadeau A, Despre's JP. Hypertriglyceridemic waist. A marker of the atherogenic metabolic triad (hyperinsulinemia, hyperapolipoprotein B, small, dense LDL) in men. *Circulation.* 2000; 102:179-84.
- Despres JP, Golay A, Sjostrom L. Effects of rimonabant on metabolic risk factors in overweight patients with dyslipidemia. *N Engl J Med* 2005; 353:2121-2134.
- Ginsberg, HN, Haung, LS. The insulin resistance syndrome: impact on lipoprotein metabolism and atherothrombosis. *J Cardiovasc Risk* 2000; 7:3235-3331.
- Drayna D, Jamagin AS, Mclean J. cloning and sequencing of the human cholesteryl ester transfer protein cDNA. *Nature* 1987; 327:6324.
- Morton RE. Cholesteryl ester transfer protein and its plasma regulator: lipid transfer inhibitor protein. *Curr Opin Lipidol* 1999; 10:321-7.
- Arai T, Yamashita S, Hirano K. Increased plasma cholesteryl ester transfer protein in obese subjects: a possible mechanism for the reduction of serum HDL cholesterol levels in obesity. *Arterioscler Thromb* 1994; 14:1129-36.
- Malmstro R, Packard CJ, Watson TD. Metabolic basis of hypotriglyceridemic effects of insulin in normal men. *Arterioscler Thromb Vase Biol* 1997; 17:1454-64.
- Ginsberg HN, Le N-A, Goldberg IJ. Apolipoprotein B metabolism in subjects with deficiency of apolipoproteins C-III and AI; evidence that apolipoprotein CIII inhibits catabolism of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins by lipoprotein lipase in vivo. *J Clin Invest* 1986; 78:1287-95.
- Lamarche B, Tchernof A, Mauriege p. Fasting insulin and apolipoprotein B levels and low-density lipoprotein particle size as risk factors for ischemic heart disease. *JAMA* 1998; 279:19 55-61.
- Chatt A, Brazg RL, Tribble DL. Susceptibility of small, dense, low-density lipoproteins to oxidative modification in subjects with the atherogenic lipoprotein phenotype, pattern B. *Am J Med* 1993; 94:350-6.
- Wilson PW, Grundy SM. The metabolic syndrome: practical guide to origins and treatment: part I. *Circulation* 2003; 108:1422-4.
- Barter PJ, Rye KA. High density lipoproteins and coronary heart disease. *Atherosclerosis* 1996; 121:1-12.

This page is intentionally left blank



GLOBAL JOURNAL OF MEDICAL RESEARCH: F  
DISEASES

Volume 15 Issue 3 Version 1.0 Year 2015

Type: Double Blind Peer Reviewed International Research Journal

Publisher: Global Journals Inc. (USA)

Online ISSN: 2249-4618 & Print ISSN: 0975-5888

## Prevalence of Communicable Diseases and Causes of Variability among Secondary Schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

By David Otieno Odongo, Professor Jacob W. Wakhungu & Dr. S. Omuterema

*Masinde Muliro University of Science and Technology, Kakamega, Kenya*

**Abstract-** Prevalence of communicable diseases, which account for millions of school lost days a year, among secondary school students in Kisumu County is unknown. The number of secondary schools with school health facilities is unknown, and there is no indication from Kenya's Health Sector Strategic Plan, 2012-2017 that establishment of school health facilities will be given priority as an intervention. The overall objective of this study was to examine causes of variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya. In order to achieve the overall objective, the following were the specific objectives: to determine prevalence rates of communicable diseases among secondary students in Kisumu County; to determine the cause of variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among students; and to evaluate public health intervention programs for optimal use in secondary schools. Survey, Correlational and Evaluation research designs were used for the three objectives respectively.

*GJMR-F Classification : NLMC Code: WY 153*



*Strictly as per the compliance and regulations of:*



© 2015. David Otieno Odongo, Professor Jacob W. Wakhungu & Dr. S. Omuterema. This is a research/review paper, distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial 3.0 Unported License <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/3.0/>), permitting all non-commercial use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

# Prevalence of Communicable Diseases and Causes of Variability among Secondary Schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

David Otieno Odongo <sup>α</sup>, Professor Jacob W. Wakhungu <sup>σ</sup> & Dr. S. Omuterema <sup>ρ</sup>

**Abstract-** Prevalence of communicable diseases, which account for millions of school lost days a year, among secondary school students in Kisumu County is unknown. The number of secondary schools with school health facilities is unknown, and there is no indication from Kenya's Health Sector Strategic Plan, 2012-2017 that establishment of school health facilities will be given priority as an intervention. The overall objective of this study was to examine causes of variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya. In order to achieve the overall objective, the following were the specific objectives: to determine prevalence rates of communicable diseases among secondary students in Kisumu County; to determine the cause of variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among students; and to evaluate public health intervention programs for optimal use in secondary schools. Survey, Correlational and Evaluation research designs were used for the three objectives respectively. A total of 400 students (212 boys and 188 girls) from 38 schools (30 mixed schools, 5 boys' only schools, and 3 girls' only schools) randomly sampled from three sub-Counties out of seven based on coefficient of variation in terms of student enrollment by gender, type of school, and locality of the school within Kisumu County. Key informants and observation units were sampled purposively while Focus Group Discussion was by quota sampling. Students who self-reported communicable disease illnesses which were not clinically confirmed were taken for medical examination at health facilities in the neighborhood of their schools where blood, urine, stool and sputum were the samples for malaria parasite test, pneumonia test, *clostridium difficile* test and *mycobacterium tuberculosis* test respectively, while those with clinically confirmed illnesses showed clinic or hospital cards. The latter group of students were then subjected to an in-depth interview. Data analyses were done using Statistical Package for Social Science (SPSS) Windows (version 15.2; Chicago, IL) and descriptive analyses was also used. Chi-square test and ANOVA were performed for comparing proportions and probability of  $<0.05$  was considered Statistically Significant. Strength of association was considered by estimating F at its 95% confidence interval. Normative evaluation was also used to evaluate public health programs. This study has revealed that prevalence of diarrhea, tuberculosis, pneumonia and other respiratory infections are lower among female students than male students while prevalence of malaria is higher in males than females. The most important communicable diseases among secondary school students were Malaria, Diarrhea, Tuberculosis and

Pneumonia with prevalence rates 20.7%, 15.1%, 7.2% and 5.2% respectively. Age of students was a significant cause of variability in prevalence rates ( $p<0.05$ ). Health seeking behavior among students and provision of water at hand washing areas were best practices among public health intervention programs. There is need to establish school health units to reverse the burden of communicable diseases in schools. Research on gender roles and variation in communicable disease prevalence rates in secondary schools should be explored.

## I. INTRODUCTION

### a) Background

A communicable disease is defined as an illness that arises from transmission of an infectious agent (viruses, bacteria, chlamydiae, rickettsiae, fungi, protozoa or metozoa) or its toxic product from an infected person, animal or reservoir to a susceptible host, either directly or indirectly through an intermediate plant or animal host, vector, or environment (AMREF, 2004). Prevalence is a measure of disease that allows us to determine a person's likelihood of being ill.

Communicable diseases still dominate the morbidity profile in Kenya. Majority of Kenyans continue to seek treatment in health care facilities for ailments that can be controlled through preventive and promotive measures (WHO, 2007). The burden of communicable diseases is high, with malaria as the leading cause of morbidity (30%) (WHO, 2005) followed by respiratory diseases (24.5%).

HIV prevalence is 7.4%, the rate being higher in women (8.5%) compared to men (5.6%). This is partly because most sexually active youths do not consistently use condoms and most women feel powerless to negotiate safer sex with their partners. Tuberculosis (TB) control has been more challenging, with high TB prevalence of 319 per 100 000, TB/HIV co-infection prevalence of 53% and a growing threat of MDR/XDR-TB (WHO, 2008). Overcrowding and intermittent use of antibiotics are some of the challenges facing TB control. Kenyan student population has increased since the introduction of free schooling (GoK, 2012). In public secondary schools, the number has risen from 1.1 million students in 2008 to 1.85 million in 2012 leading to increased student membership in the existing hostels and other social amenities in the schools.

Author <sup>α</sup> <sup>σ</sup> <sup>ρ</sup>: Masinde Muliro University of Science and Technology, Kakamega, Kenya. e-mails: [dvdotieno@gmail.com](mailto:dvdotieno@gmail.com), [jwanambacha@yahoo.com](mailto:jwanambacha@yahoo.com), [omu53@yahoo.com](mailto:omu53@yahoo.com)

Kisumu County suffers from high burden of communicable diseases as well as emerging threats. According to the Kenya Demographic and Health Survey, (GoK.,2010) the County has one of the highest HIV/AIDS prevalence rates at 17% higher than the Nyanza region rate of 15.3%, and national rate of 7.4%. Kisumu West District, one of the districts in the County, suffers from high levels of HIV/AIDS, Diarrhea, Malaria, Multi-Drug Resistant TB (MDR-TB), and other communicable diseases. More than half of the population relies on surface water as the main source of drinking water. 42% of the households share toilets while 21% have no toilets (KWHDS, 2011).

Kisumu is a highly disaster-prone county. Floods and drought affect different geographical zones annually with a varying degree of damage to health infrastructure and people's health causing interruption in access to safe water and collapse of sanitation infrastructure (Mourmie, 2011). Kisumu County is malaria endemic and has large tracks of wetlands, some of which are under rice and sugarcane farms.

#### b) *Statement of the problem*

Kisumu County was chosen because it is malaria endemic region (AMREF, 2004) with a very large area under agricultural irrigation. It is also adjacent to a large pool of water and wetlands. These facts indicate that many people in Kisumu County, students included, are at risk of contracting communicable diseases such as diarrhea, typhoid, intestinal parasite infections, trachoma, and schistosomiasis among others, which account for millions of school lost days (CDC, 2007). A major contributing factor to this burden of communicable disease is inadequate access to safe water and sanitation infrastructure (Boschi-Pinto *et al.*, 2008).

Integration of school health services into National and County health services will ensure timely surveillance, prevention and treatment of communicable diseases in schools. However, at present there is no national guideline to provide a framework for the transformation of school health service into an integrated County health service; strategies and interventions to work with other ministries have not been spelled out in the Kenya's Health Sector Strategic Plan, 2012-2017 (GoK, 2012).

High school students are a neglected group that very little research has been done concerning health challenges due to communicable diseases they face in school (Muna, 2010). A lot of research has been done on health challenges facing infants, under five year olds, and fifteen years and below age brackets. There is little information on the extent of prevalence rates of communicable diseases and the factors affecting their variability among secondary schools and therefore need to provide baseline information that will be used by policy makers to come up with viable

intervention programs to address communicable disease burden in schools.

#### c) *Research Objective*

The overall objective was to examine causes of variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya. In order to achieve the research objective, the following were the specific objectives for the study:

- i. To determine prevalence rates of communicable disease infection among secondary school students,
- ii. To determine cause of variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among students in secondary schools to inform policy formulation,
- iii. To evaluate existing public health intervention programs for optimal use in secondary schools.

#### d) *Research Questions*

The research, in an attempt to meet the research objective, found answers to the following questions:

Are prevalence rates of communicable diseases significant among students in secondary schools?

What are causes of variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among students within and between schools?

Which are optimal public health intervention programs for secondary schools?

#### e) *Significance*

Over the past few decades we have witnessed several phases in the development of approaches to public health intervention programs aimed at minimizing prevalence of communicable diseases among students and the public in general. Initially the vulnerable population was thought to be the source of problem of compliance. Later, the role of the provider was also addressed. Now we acknowledge that a systems approach is required. The idea of compliance is associated too closely with blame, be it of provider or vulnerable populations and the concept of adherence is a better way of capturing the dynamic and complex changes required of many players over long periods to maintain optimal public health intervention programs in vulnerable populations.

A major contributing factor to high communicable disease burden in low income countries is inadequate access to safe water and sanitation infrastructure (Leslie *et al.*, 2012). There is need, in the short to medium term, to reduce the risk of communicable diseases in vulnerable populations that will not soon benefit from infrastructure interventions that will take years. Intervention programs to reduce diarrheal and respiratory diseases have been demonstrated in both clinical and community settings, including schools around the world (Anna *et al.*, 2007; Sam *et al.*,

2010). Involving students in a public health behavior change intervention programs ensures successful diffusion of innovation into student's homes. Therefore by examining factors affecting communicable disease prevalent rates among students and causes of its variability within and between schools, the researcher came up with significant indicators to be used in optimizing adherence to public health behavior change intervention programs in schools.

f) *Scope*

This study determine dcauses of variability of communicable disease prevalence rates among secondary students registered in public schools in Kisumu County in the months of February through to April, 2014. It was a modified retrospective study based on clinically confirmed self-reported illnesses by the students in the last two week sat the time of data collection. Students with unconfirmed clinical illnesses were taken for medical examination procedures at the nearest health facilities to the schools sampled and tests performed by health professionals. Stools and blood formed part of samples examined for Malaria, Typhoid, Dysentery and Tuberculosis. The results were used to corroborate responses from Focus group discussion with Key Informants. Intervention programs that were evaluated included bed spacing, ventilation, condition of floor and walls of hostels, and use of ITNs in hostels; desk spacing, condition of floor and walls of classrooms, and ventilation of classrooms; student-toilet ratio, hand washing hygiene after defecation, presence of water-soap-disposable towels at hand washing area; solid and liquid waste management; mosquito breeding control; school kitchen and food kiosk staff hygiene; and safe water provision.

## CHAPTER TWO

### II. LITERATURE REVIEW

a) *Introduction*

Communicable diseases do not always develop in the same way in susceptible hosts. Some diseases produce more non-clinical cases that experience vague, non-specific symptoms or none at all (TB, Cholera, and Polio) and the infected thus spread the disease without being aware. Other diseases produce more clinical cases with easily detectable symptoms (Measles) (WHO, 2008). However, once exposed, people with specific symptoms as well as people without clinical or biological signs of infection are capable of spreading the disease to other susceptible persons. Transmission of communicable diseases can be investigated under the following thematic areas:

b) *Risk factor-based analysis*

During the modern era of public health, attention to the natural and built environment has fluctuated (McMichael, 2001). Public health scientists are

increasingly discovering that the recent emergence of infectious diseases has an origin in environmental change (McMichael & Martens, 2002; Patz et al., 2000). However, a growing body of literature on environmental change and infectious disease has emerged during the past decade, returning public health to its roots (Anderson, 2004). Suggestions that public health move from a discipline concerned primarily with risk factors at the individual level, and within the realm, provide the basis for testing causal hypotheses.

This has reflected wider trends in biomedical thought and praxis. In the 19th Century, the progenitors of public health instituted a suit of interventions that astutely reflected perceived linkages between environmental conditions and poor health. Debates on the future of epidemiology offer guidance for the study of environmental change and communicable disease burden. Risk factor analysis may adeptly explain who is at risk but not why risks exist or differ within and between populations (Susser, 2004). In response, more valid and precise techniques that better accounts for bias and error have been developed (Lash & Fink, 2003). Others, on the other hand, have continued to advocate for risk factor approach, stressing the role of apparently inexplicable results in eventually guiding discovery (Greenland et al., 2004).

Although such refinement and reflection have addressed some weaknesses of risk factor analysis, others have emerged. For example, although the individual level may be an important scale for probing certain public health questions, risk factor analysis is challenged by the complexity of fundamental causes, including social and ecological drivers (Pimentel et al., 1998), gene-environmental interventions (Hunter, 2005), and life course trajectories (Susser & Terry, 2003). The causes of variability in prevalence rates o communicable diseases has not been documented as shown in the knowledge gap reported in Susser(2004).

c) *Causal inference for communicable disease*

Yet other critiques have questioned the traditional analyzed approach in epidemiology that assumes independence of outcome. The assumption of independence means that the causal link between exposure and disease is made at the individual level. This model hinges on the premise that populations are simple collections of individuals, and the nature or arrangement of interactions between individuals does not alter patterns of risk (Koopman et al., 2004). In complex systems, inappropriate inferences based on potential outcome can severely distort the interpretation of effects and misdirect the application of interventions (Eisenberg et al., 2003). Risk factor analysis for infectious disease can be sometimes be partially salvaged through employing counterfactuals (Robins et al., 2000), but results from both experimental and

observational studies warrant cautious scrutiny prior to generalization.

There are important gender differences related to epidemic prone infectious diseases. Differences between males and females arise because of biological, and as consequence of gender-based roles, behavior and power (WHO, 2007). For reasons that are not yet understood (WHO, 2003), females had lower mortality rates from severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) than males, a pattern that is maintained after adjusting for age. The question whether epidemiologists should assume independence of outcome or violate it when making causal inferences for communicable diseases is a question of interest. Prevalence rates within and between populations is not documented.

#### d) *Interdisciplinary research and integration*

Virtually all integrative reviews are, at least to some extent, interdisciplinary, as the study of environmental change and communicable disease clearly requires expertise from numerous fields (Parkens et al., 2005; Patz et al., 2004). Most integrative reviews include various biomedical sciences with more current work displaying greater inclusivity and deeper collaboration. In addition, integrative reviews that reference the gradually growing number of case studies on sustainable development or ecosystem approaches (Corvalan et al., 2005) bridge scientists, policy makers, activists, and citizens.

Interdisciplinary research collaboration is the best way to go in coming up with the optimal public health intervention programs. Use of Focus Group discussion involving professionals from diverse backgrounds is not documented in the literature on communicable diseases and environment.

#### e) *Systems theory-based approach*

The overt consideration of feedbacks and interactions within and between populations in a transmission model allows for a consideration of infectious diseases as inherently dynamic and interdependent processes, and thus causality as context dependent and systems based (Koopman et al., 2004). These systems all use a systems theory-based approach to extend the purview of causation across axes of space, time, and organizational level and purpose to interrelate research at different scales through feedbacks and interactions. For example, if a core group is sustaining infection in a larger group, targeting interventions based on individual-level risk factors will not, in general, address the principle cause of disease (Christly et al., 2005; Verdasca et al., 2005).

This study adopted a socio-economic systems perspective approach to epidemiologic research. It looked at social aspects of an individual or population and communicable disease prevalence rates.

#### f) *Conceptual Frameworks*

A set of integrative reviews articulate conceptual frameworks for comprehensively organizing knowledge about systems of interacting components that link fundamental drivers to disease resurgence through an interplay of subsystems (Weiss & McMichael, 2004; Wilcox & Colwell, 2005). Some existing conceptual frameworks could also be applied to environmental change and infectious diseases. Particularly germane are frameworks for climate change (McMichael & Butler, 2004), globalization (Woodward et al., 2001), social epidemiology and environmental health (Parkes et al., 2003).

This study borrowed heavily social epidemiology and environmental health framework models. This was done to address the fact that targeting interventions based on individuals-level risk factors when a core group is sustaining infection in a larger group will not address the principle cause of the disease.

#### g) *Transmission models embedded within wider systems*

The influence of social and ecological contexts on disease transmission has been recognized for diseases spread through direct contact, for example sexually transmitted diseases and airborne diseases (Shen et al., 2004); diseases with environmental reservoirs, for example waterborne diseases (Eisenberg et al., 2005); and diseases for which land use change moderates vector populations, for example vector borne diseases (Lindblende et al., 2000). Transmission models can serve as conceptual or analytical instruments to analyze the infections between environmental contexts and transmission cycle components (Smith & Desai 2005).

#### h) *Communicable disease burden globally*

Communicable disease burden can be expressed in Disability Adjusted Life Years (DALY), which combines the burden due to death and disability in a single index. The DALY index allows comparison of the impact of different diseases, and the contribution of environmental and other risk factors to these diseases. Table 2.1 presents the estimated contribution of selected environmental risk factors to major diseases in less developed and more developed countries (WHO, 2002).

While Table 2.1 represents the global burden of communicable diseases in all age groups, one can surmise the relative effect of environmental exposures in children. It is important to remember that children are affected disproportionately by environmental exposures as compared to adults.

Table 2.1 : Attributable DALY by level of development

Risk factor	Example of disease	High mortality; developing countries('000)	Low mortality; developed countries('000)	More developed countries('000)
Unsafe water, sanitation and hygiene	Diarrheal diseases	46 183	7 150	825
Urban air pollution	Respiratory infections	2 685	4 008	1 171
Indoor smoke from solid fuel	Lower respiratory infections, lung cancers	30 393	7 595	550
Lead exposure	Cardiovascular diseases, hypertensive diseases	5 953	5 584	1 388
Climate change	Diarrheal diseases, malaria, unintentional injuries	5 202	294	22

Source: WHO (2002)

David (2013) reports there are several ways of categorizing communicable diseases. However, World Health Organization uses three guiding principles for prioritization: [i] communicable diseases with large scale impact on mortality, morbidity and disability, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), tuberculosis (TB) and malaria, [ii] communicable diseases that can potentially cause epidemics, such as influenza and cholera; and [iii] communicable diseases that can be effectively controlled with available cost-effective interventions, such as diarrheal diseases and tuberculosis (TB) (WHO, 2005). The leading six communicable diseases mentioned by World Health Organization, which cause almost 90% of communicable disease deaths, are: acute respiratory infections (including pneumonia and influenza), human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS), diarrheal diseases, tuberculosis, malaria and measles.

i. *Pneumonia*

Pneumonia is an inflammation of the lungs most often caused by infection with bacteria, viruses (50 percent of all cases) and other organisms, although there are also non-infections causes (inhalation of food, liquid, gases or dust). It is tested by mucus test which include a Gram stain and sputum culture; rapid urine test to identify presence of bacteria that cause pneumonia; presence of Pneumocystis carinii for those who are HIV positive (ALA, 2013). Other tests include blood tests to confirm the presence of infection and to try to identify the type of organism causing the infection; and chest X-rays to confirm the presence of pneumonia and determine the extent and location of the infection. Pneumonia is often a pre-existing condition/infection and is triggered when a patient's defense system is weakened, most often by a simple viral respiratory tract infection or a case of influenza, especially in the elderly

(Hayden & Croisier, 2005). Pneumonia affects the lungs in different ways. Lobar pneumonia affects a lobe of the lungs, and bronchial pneumonia can affect patches throughout both lungs. One type of pneumonia caused by fungi is Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia (PCP) which primarily affects AIDS patients. Certain diseases, such as tuberculosis, can also predispose someone to pneumonia (WHO, 2005).

The symptoms of pneumonia are similar to influenza symptoms and include fever, dry cough, headache, muscle pain, weakness and increasingly breathlessness (WHO, 2009a). Mycoplasmas are the smallest free - living agents of disease in man with characteristics of both bacteria and viruses and generally cause a mild and widespread pneumonia. The most prominent symptom of mycoplasma pneumoniae is a cough that tends to come in violent attacks, but produces only sparse whitish mucus. Mycoplasmas are responsible for approximately 15 – 50 percent of all adult cases of pneumonia and an even higher rate in school age children (US NLM, 2013). They can be treated by antibiotics, but providing antibiotics is not a simple matter in communities with little access to health care or health education. Families may delay seeking treatment for their child or not receive that treatment until it is too late. While this happens, the infected child continues to interact in school with other healthy or similarly infected students causing new infections and increased pathogen-dose effect in the healthy and infected students respectively. This can be exacerbated by overcrowding. It is for this reason that bed and desk spacing in hostels and classrooms respectively and indoor air quality were evaluated in this study to help answer research question ii] and iii].

In a study by Baker et al. (2013), a combined data from four case control and observational studies showed that children less than five years old exposed to greater household crowding had 1.69 times the odds of



pneumonia than children exposed to the least crowding. Pneumonia and influenza are together ranked as eighth leading cause of death in the United States (US NCHS, 2009). Pneumonia consistently account for the overwhelming majority deaths between the two. Less than 2 percent of these deaths take place in the European Region and less than 3 percent in the Region of the Americas.

Etiology of pneumonia infection has all indications toward personal hygiene and crowding. Evaluation of bed spacing in hostels and desk spacing in classrooms to bring up association between the two variables and prevalence of pneumonia is not documented.

#### ii. *Diarrheal diseases*

Diarrhea is defined in medicine as the passing per day of three or more stools which are sufficiently liquid to take the shape of a container (Keusch et al., 2006). Stools are tested for *Clostridium difficile* (*C. difficile*). Positive test for *C. difficile* confirms diarrhea. Diarrhea have many causes, the most common being intestinal infection. Common etiological agents are bacteria like *Escherichia coli* (*e. coli*), *campylobacter*, *salmonella*, and *shigella* bio-serotypes or viruses like adenovirus, rotavirus and norwalkvirus. Parasites like *entamoeba histolytica* and *giardia lamblia* also cause diarrhea (Merson et al., 2005).

Diarrheal diseases are estimated to have caused approximately two million deaths during 1998, most of which were children under five years living in developing countries. It was long thought that contaminated water supplies were the main source of pathogens causing diarrhea, but it is now been shown that food can be responsible for up to 70% of diarrheal episodes (Muna, 2010; Eisenberg et al., 2007). Infections due to pathogenic *Escherichia coli* (*E.coli*) are the common cause of diarrhea. This study determined prevalence of diarrhea and evaluated food handling hygiene practices in schools. Water sources and storage were points of interest in this study.

Human being is constantly exposed to potentially infectious organisms. The struggle to combat the organisms is a continuous and life long process. The defense against microbes and germs is a vital and essential function in survival. Its outcome depends on many factors (Scholth of, 2007): first, host factors are factors that relate to the person hosting the infectious agent. The most important host factor is the immune system. Its strength depends on factors like genetics and physical and mental state of the patient. The latter depends on among other things on nutrition, rest and stress.

It has been documented that malnutrition increases the risk of dying from diarrhea (Ochoa et al., 2004). Stress has been found to have a direct effect on the immune function through impairment of natural killer

cell cytotoxicity (Cohen et al., 2007). Stress is constant in many poor countries in low-to- middle level income countries.

Secondly, agent factors are of importance to the occurrence and outcome of diarrhea and include virulence of the agent, pathophysiology and dose. Virulence is the relative ability of an organism to cause disease (Rodrigues et al., 2007). Bacteria causing diarrhea primarily act through two pathophysiological mechanisms. One is through the release of toxins that affect the secretion or absorption of fluids in the intestine; another is through invasion of the mucous membranes, usually of large bowel. Viruses that cause diarrhea often infect the small cells of the intestinal villi. This leads to malabsorption by impaired hydrolysis of carbohydrates and excessive fluid loss (Keusch et al., 2006), therefore the reason why adherence by secondary students to water and sanitation and food hygiene intervention programs were evaluated in this study.

Thirdly, frequency of exposure from diarrheal agents is a function both of specific agent factors and the environment. Characteristics of the agent that matter is for instance the ability of the agent to survive outside the human body. *Shigella* is very sensitive and expires quickly in the environment; *Cholera* (caused by *vibrio cholera*, a gram-negative bacterium) survives well in water and sewage, many diarrheal agents thrive in organic matter and can therefore multiply rapidly in food (Scholthof, 2007). All these various characteristics are important for control measures. In *shigella*, isolation of the individual is particularly important. Dysentery signifies passing of stools with blood. It is still endemic in most countries. The most common causes of dysentery are *shigella* and amoebiasis (Pazhani et al., 2004; Keusch et al., 2006).

In cholera, it is important to reduce the contacts between the infected and others, but it is equally important to limit the use of water sources containing the vibrios (Ryan & Calderwood, 2000). Control of hygiene in public eating places is a well-established public health function to prevent the occurrence and spread of pathogens like *salmonella* and *Escherichia coli*. Keeping school environment clean by ensuring proper disposal of both solid and liquid waste, frequency of exposure from diarrheal agents will be minimized. In this study, data on solid and liquid waste management practices was collected using an observation check list during a transect walk in the school.

A model of the interaction between water and diarrhea distinguishes five pathways of transmission; within households, household-to-household, household-to-water, water-to-household, and external-to-community (Eisenberg et al., 2007). The most common route of transmission of diarrheal agents is the fecal-oral route, within households or between households

(Keusch et al., 2006). Agents are excreted through feces by carriers and transmitted to other persons either through water, food or personal contact. Hand washing after having passed stools is particularly important as a measure at individual level to reduce spread of pathogens (Clasen et al., 2006). Provision of safe water, good sanitation, waste management and food control are vital community interventions to prevent diarrhea.

Other environmental factors of relevance to the occurrence of diarrhea are traditional beliefs and cultures (Ellis et al., 2007), the health care system (Mills et al., 2006), the role and status of women (Scholth of, 2007). Socio-economic differences (Burstrom et al., 2005; Wagstaff et al., 2004), Climate and seasonal variation in temperature (El-Gilany & Hammad, 2005; Rendi-Wagner et al., 2006). A well functional disease control program will depend on a strong health system with facilities and well trained and motivated personnel in place (Lindstrom et al., 2006). Both the skills and infrastructure may be deficient due to system problems (Bryce et al., 2004; Rowe et al., 2005).

Food handling is a great challenge in food and beverage industry and with the evidence that food is responsible for up to 70% of diarrheal episodes, the need to prevent food contamination is more urgent. To gather data on food handling, this study evaluated the hygiene situation in the school kiosks, school kitchen and dining hall or eating area, and the markets adjacent to the sampled schools. The results have been used to come up with workable intervention programs to address the hygiene situation in schools.

Most studies in communicable disease prevalence are retrospective in nature. For example, in an infection study by an outbreak of Salmonella Typhimurium phage type 44, many students at a school in Kaohsiung County, Taiwan, began having food poisoning like symptoms, such as diarrhea, fever, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal cramps (Tsu-Fen Chen et al. 2011; Stephanie et al., 2009).

Studies by Fen Chen et al. (2011) and Stephanie et al. (2009) used clinical procedures for the contacts but did not carry out in-depth interviews. Use of qualitative data in retrospective method of data collection from students with clinically confirmed illnesses has not been recorded.

### iii. *Malaria*

Malaria is a parasitic infection spread by Anopheles mosquitoes. The Plasmodium parasite that causes malaria is neither virus nor a bacterium- it is a single celled parasite that multiplies in red blood cells of humans as well as in the mosquito intestine. Its infection is confirmed by blood smear testing positive for malaria parasite (Nicholas et al., 2014).

The latest report on global malaria trend is based on information from 106 countries where malaria is endemic (WHO, 2011). The report estimates that

globally there were: 655 000 deaths from malaria in 2010 from 216 million episodes; 91% of deaths and 81% of the episodes were in the African Region; Malaria incidence declined by 17%. These improvements are attributed to human interventions, including greater use of insecticide treated bed nets, indoor residual spraying, rapid diagnostic tests, and artemisinin based combination therapies.

The age distribution of cases of malaria is influenced strongly by the intensity of malaria transmission. In areas where the population is exposed only occasionally to an infectious bite, malaria occurs in subjects of all ages, most frequently in adults who have an occupational risk (Nankabirwa et al., 2013). In contrast, in areas of high transmission, the main burden of malaria transmission, including nearly all malaria deaths, is in young children (Snow & Marsh, 2002; Cameiro et al., 2010).

Some of the successful malaria intervention programs can be learnt from the government of Oman, Sultanate of Oman (2012) introduced School Health Program as an intervention process to reverse the upward trend of communicable diseases. This is an example of integrated preventive and curative health services.

Evaluating school health system was the first step in identifying barriers to creation of safe and healthy school environments through health education for personal and community health. From the foregoing literature, evaluation of public health intervention programs is not recorded.

### iv. *Tuberculosis (TB)*

Tuberculosis is an infectious disease that usually affects the lungs. Mycobacterium tuberculosis (M. tuberculosis) causes TB. It is spread through the air from person to person, when people with TB affecting the lungs cough, sneeze, spit, laugh or talk. A positive culture for M. tuberculosis confirms the diagnosis of TB disease (Sterling et al., 2011).

Tuberculosis has been declared as a global health emergency by the World Health Organization (WHO). This has been mainly due to the emergence of multi-drug resistance (MDR) strains and the synergy between tubercle bacilli and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (Niyaz & Seyed, 2004). One of the classical threats of the tuberculosis epidemic has been the MDR-TB caused by use and often abuse of misuse of antimicrobial agents. This has encouraged the evolution of bacteria toward resistance, resulting in therapeutic failure. There are evidences that bacteria have the ability to adapt to this deficit and recover fitness on serial passage (Sharma & Mohan, 2004). The other reason is that it might be a consequence of increased reactivation of previously acquired dormant bacilli and an increase in susceptibility to both the re-infection and primary infection (Ahmed et al., 2004).

It is estimated that every year two million people die from acute pulmonary tuberculosis (PTB), and that an additional 365 000 die with TB and HIV infection, while eight million become newly infected with mycobacterium tuberculosis, adding to the estimated that two billion people (15-59 years) worldwide with latent TB infection particularly in developing countries (Ayesha, 2010). The poor and the marginalized in the developing world are the most affected.

To prevent the spread of respiratory illnesses, the nose and mouth should be covered with tissue when coughing or sneezing and the tissue should be thrown in the trash immediately after use (Daphne, 2000). Schools can teach respiratory etiquette to students and staff- including coughing or sneezing into the arm if no tissue is available- and to ensure that tissues are available. The aim of teacher training is to change attitudes towards supporting health; to encourage commitment to health as a subject; and to improve skills and understanding of the subject.

In six case -control studies and another cross sectional study (Baker et al., 2013), results showed 3.78 times increased odds of tuberculosis in the most crowded compared to the least crowded households. Lester et al. (2008) in their study to describe a secondary school outbreak of tuberculosis in Palmerston North, New Zealand 2006, found out that the delayed diagnosis of the index case lead to extensive transmission. Contact investigation detected fifteen secondary cases, from five of whom Mycobacterium tuberculosis organisms was cultured which was diagnosed in the index case. Latent tuberculosis infection was diagnosed in 235 of 1828 contacts. Following logistic regression, risk of infection was significantly associated with age, exposure setting (household and school verses other settings) and duration of exposure. Large numbers of contacts were infected who had no known contact with index case, thus indicating probable tertiary transmission from five infectious secondary cases (Lester et al., 2008).

The index case was a 14 year old boy diagnosed with smear-positive pulmonary tuberculosis (TB) in August 2006 in Palmerston North. Case and contact management was conducted by Mid Central District Health Board according to national guidelines (GoN, 2003).

In a school set up, delayed diagnosis of infectious diseases can be minimized by regular medical checkups for students, which is facilitated by having a well-run school health service. Literature above confirms lack of this in the schools which relied on national health systems. This study evaluated school health services in secondary schools in Kisumu County and observed optimal practices.

#### i) *Intervention Programs for Communicable Diseases*

Public health research and practice are credited with several notable achievements, including gains in life expectancy; and a large part of increase is the result of safer water and food supplies, sewage treatment and disposal, control of communicable diseases and other population based interventions. Political visions and principles of health promotion as outlined in World Health Organization directives, international agreements, the national policies, suggests that increased efforts in health promotion move from a 'repair' to 'prevention' model (Barry et al., 2009). The adoption of evidence based strategies has been recommended in order to achieve international and national objectives for improvements in population health (Tones & Green, 2004).

The concept of health promotion is based on the assumption that human nature is heterostatic rather than homeostatic, a statement that is in accordance with the salutogenic orientation. Its practice involves not only the question of which individual factors lead to poor health, but also a strong focus on the interactions between people and the societal structures in which they function (Marmot, 2011). Besides focusing on human resources, the contextual conditions of living situations are also addressed (Raphael, 2010). The ability to gather and use relevant evidence of 'what works' commonly known as best practices, is a key component of a country's capacity to promote healthy living conditions (Davies et al., 2000).

There is increasing demand in all sectors across the research, policy, practice continuum for evidence based decision making and accountability. Some might argue that the origins of evidence based health promotion and public health lie in the evidence based movement in the healthcare. Unlike evidence based public health, evidence based medicine has been well defined and its processes developed in the last decade (Egger et al., 2001).

Primary research based on randomized control trials (RCT) is based on the assumption that the stronger the evidence, the more powerful its influence on practice should be (Speller et al., 2005). This has created a hierarchy of research designs. However, the pre-evidence of RCT methods is controversial when applied to health promotion and wider public health intervention. Although RCT is recognized for providing the best possible information about effectiveness when the research is appropriate to the intervention type (MacIntyre et al, 2001), RCT has been found to be inappropriate research design for evaluating complex community based public health interventions (Brownson et al., 2009). There have been several attempts to define evidence based public health. At the moment, it appears to be a consensus among investigators and public health leaders that a combination of scientific evidence and values, resources, and contextual factors should be

taken into account in decision making processes (Raphael, 2010).

Evidence based public health promotion is important because society pays a high cost when interventions that yield the highest health returns are not implemented. Evidence is also important because practitioners need justifications for decisions they make (Brownson et al., 2009). Evidence based public health has not been well defined and its processes not developed. This will only come to fruition if more evidence based research is carried out to authenticate public health processes. It is for this reason that this study determined association between public health behavior change interventions and prevalence rates of communicable diseases to come up with best practices. Evaluation of adherence to public health behavior change interventions was carried out using an observation checklist during environmental health survey of the sampled schools, and not randomized control trials (RCT) because of its inappropriateness as a research design to evaluate community based public health interventions. Evidence based decision making, practice and policy is lacking as reported by Egger et al., 2001.

j) *Public Health Intervention Programs for Schools*

Education and Health is one of the two thematic clusters of Millennium Development Goal initiatives (UN, 2011). The other is Food Security and Sustainable Growth. The pragmatic shift in the past decade in our understanding of the role of health and nutrition in school age children has fundamental implications for the design of effective programs (Donald et al., 2006). The Global health agenda is shifting from an emphasis on disease-specific approaches to a focus on strengthening of health systems (Reich, 2009).

World Health Organization (WHO) launched Global School Health Initiative in 1995, to mobilize and strengthen health promotion and education activities at the local, national, regional and global levels. The initiative is designed to improve the health of students, schools, school personnel, families and other members of the community through schools. The goal is to increase the number of schools that can truly be called "Health Promoting Schools". A Health Promoting School can be characterized as a school constantly strengthening its capacity as a healthy setting for living, learning and working (WHO, 1996).

Martin (2010) describes environment as a physical, chemical and biological condition of a region in which an organism lives. The author observes that environment is classified into internal and external. Internal environment includes every component part, cells, organ, organic system and tissues, and their harmonious functioning within the system. External environment, on the other hand, consists of those things a living organism is exposed to immediately after

conception. These may include, but not limited to, physical, biological and psychological components which can affect the life of the living organism and its susceptibility to illness.

Environment components are linked to each other and significantly influence the health status of a school and students (Masike & Mojekwa, 2012). A person's ill-health can be traced to adverse environmental factors that include poor housing, presence of animal reservoirs, water pollution, and soil pollution, and insect vectors of diseases. Man is responsible for all these environmental changes (Parks, 2008). Public health intervention programs for schools have double benefits because the intended behavior change diffuses to the households during the interaction between the student and the home environment. Only successful public health intervention programs have been documented. This study has filled this gap by observing not only the successful interventions, but also those that are less optimal. Some of the successful public health intervention programs for communicable diseases in schools include:

i. *School Health Services, Training of School Health Nurses, and Teacher Education*

School Health Service has many components including health inspection (HI), health education, immunization, health survey, first aid in some cases, treatment of children with minor ailments, and referral system. Components are greatly varied from country to country and even within one country, and are dependent on financial and material resources available to render the services (Daphne, 2000).

A focus on school going children is important because children spend a lot of their time at school, away from home; because some parents tend to postpone health seeking for children's health problems; because transmission of communicable diseases in school children can easily occur due to large concentration of children in school; and because this is the time when very important health related habits develop (Vlok, 1988). Studies have shown that health inspection in schools is necessary to ensure that children derive optimum benefit from investments in education and health programs, and that they remain physically, mentally and socially healthy (Searle, 1994). School health education is another important component of School Health Service. According to World Health Organization (WHO), health education is the most developed component of school health service (WHO, 1996). It concentrates in improving behavior that promotes health and prevents ill-health. It allows for development of skills of the youth, change of attitudes and development of positive values related to those behaviors.

The American Nursing Association (ANA), the colleges of Nurses in Canada and the Professional

Nursing Associations have developed standards of practice to nurses practicing in a school setting. The standard includes concepts, such as appropriate nursing theory; the development of a comprehensive School Health Service (SHS) program; interdisciplinary collaboration; health education; professional development; participating with other community development agencies; and extensive community involvement and research (Cookfair, 1991). Japan has a school-based nurse system of healthcare (WHO, 1996).

Components of environment significantly affect the life of the living organism and its susceptibility to illness, and so is the health status of the school and students. Students and other school community members are responsible for the health status of the school environment. School health services vary even within a County. This makes it difficult to monitor and therefore need to come up with a national framework from which school health services will be tailored. This may involve training and hiring of school health nurses and infusing school health education in the curriculum of teacher education. It will also guide allocation of funds by the County governments to support school health services. This study evaluated school health services to come up with the best in relation to communicable disease prevalence rates.

School health service is known to improve health seeking behavior of students. There are also related gender differences to health seeking behavior and access to health care. In some societies there are differences in the utilization of health care facilities and in the level and type of care given to males and females. A follow up observation study in Kolkata, India, for example, found that boys with diarrhea were more likely to be given oral rehydration fluids than girls, and were more likely to be taken to qualified health professionals for treatment. Boys were also taken for care outside the home significantly sooner than girls (Pandey, 2002). A similar result was found in Bangladesh where the time between the onset of symptoms and admission was significantly higher in girls than boys (Mitra, Rahman & Fuchs, 2000).

ii. *Building mutually-beneficial relationships between schools and communities*

Building mutually beneficial relationships between schools and communities is one of the strategies used to reduce communicable disease burden among students and the neighboring communities. It involves the use of a "School Community Connector." A school community connector is a person whose job is to find and build relationships with a wide range of neighborhood "assets"-residents, voluntary associations, local institutions, businesses-and then to connect them to the neighborhood school and its assets-teachers, students, space, equipment, among others (Dancia et al., 2013). Dozens of such

connections are facilitated, resulting in significant health benefits to both the school and the community.

When parents and community members are engaged in the life of a school, the resources available for teaching and healthy learning environment expand (Henderson & Mapp, 2002). When teachers and principal build trust with each other and with parents, they can develop a common vision for school reform and work together to implement necessary changes in the school. The relationship between the school and other community institutions such as community organizations, businesses and churches can also be understood in this way.

Interpersonal relationships built between individuals across these institutions provide the glue for innovative collaborations at the institutional level (Epstein & Sheldon, 2002). These partnerships strengthen relationship among people in the entire community to meet the challenges of communicable diseases. Collaboration between the school and neighboring community is important when it is used to enforce public health interventions. School-community collaboration was evaluated in this study during focus group discussion by doing a SWOT analysis of the school and the community.

Building mutually-beneficial relationships between schools and communities is one important strategy in minimizing communicable disease burden in schools. The Asset-Based Community Development (ABCD) Institute at Northwestern University has been researching issues surrounding school-community connectedness since the early 1990s (Dancia et al., 2013). ABCD provides effective strategies for rediscovering and mobilizing the layers of resources already present in any community. According to ABCD, no plan, solution or organization from outside community can duplicate what is already there. Although some resources from outside the community are needed, the key lasting solutions comes from within. The gifts and skills of residents and assets of the physical community are always the starting point.

iii. *Water, Sanitation and Hygiene (WASH) for Schools and Communities*

WASH in schools' programming focuses on improvement of water and sanitation access; point-of-use water treatment technologies; and behavior change and hygiene promotion (Pamela, 2010). It also does assessment of WASH facilities, formation of school WASH committees, and training of students, teachers and community on operation and maintenance of WASH facilities. WASH in schools has boosted school attendance and achievement, and has promoted personal hygiene and environmental sanitation in schools and communities and at the same time reduced the burden of diarrheal diseases.

Keeping hands clean is one of the best ways to keep from getting sick and spreading illnesses (Anne, 2011; CDC, 2013). Practicing good hand hygiene gets rid of bacteria and viruses from contact with other people or surfaces. Schools play a key role in supporting hand hygiene. This involves teaching good hand hygiene practices, and providing the hand soap and paper towels necessary to reduce the spread of infectious diseases in the school. Hand washing hygiene practices was evaluated in this study. A study in Korea directly observed hand washing practices and found that only 63.4% of observed subjects truly washed their hands after using the toilet, despite the fact that 94% of subjects claimed to mostly or always wash hands after using public toilets/rest rooms (Jeong, Choi, Jeong et al., 2007)

In May 2002 more than 700 Ontario residents contracted Shigellosis and suffered through Victoria Day long weekend with fever, abdominal cramps and watery diarrhea (CMAJ, 2002). By current accounts, the source was most likely a commercially prepared pasta salad made in Toronto and distributed throughout the province. In 2001, about 860 cases of Shigellosis were reported in Canada. Ontario's 700 cases in 2002 might secure Shigellosis position as the third most common cause of bacterial food borne infections in North America after Salmonella and Campylobacter. Transmission of Shigellosis infection is by the fecal-oral route. The importance of hand washing with soap, and strict hygiene for food preparation particularly after activities such as bowel movements, changing diapers and anal sexual contact, cannot be overemphasized (Anne, 2011).

Availability of water, soap and hand towels at the hand washing area may not be indicators of good hygiene practices but are wealth indicators. Literature available does not record evaluation of food handling and storage in the school kiosks, adjacent markets, and the school kitchen; and hand washing procedure by the food handlers as practices in public health intervention.

#### iv. Health Screening Programs for Students

Health screening is a health examination procedure done to determine the possible presence of disease or other health problem (AHA, 2011). It is conducted routinely by doctors, insurers and researchers when there is a reason to suspect a particular health problem exists, and what follows, then, are common recommendations for information specific to their needs.

After non-invasive screening for Chlamydia and Gonorrhoea became available in the early 1990s, the first population based high school screening program was launched in New Orleans in 1995 (Cohen et al., , 1998). There was a great deal of experiment about the potential of the method to eliminate a large reservoir of

asymptomatic infections. The access to high rise of adolescents was unparallel.

Many other American researchers followed suit, instituting their own school based screening programs in partnership with schools in Chicago, San Francisco, Baltimore, Philadelphia, Los Angeles, New York City and Miami. Initially in New Orleans, there was a suggestion that the repeated screening was having an impact on overall prevalence of diseases, but as time went on, it was clear that the early promise was not fulfilled. Adolescents were not fully compliant with the testing. In spite of expansion to 13 high schools in the city and participation rates at each screening reaching 35%-65% of all enrolled, high rates of infection, especially among high school girls persisted (Nsunami & Cohen, 2000).

Initially, the failure to show a decline in New Orleans was attributed to the inability to screen enough students in enough schools, so efforts to obtain more funding for an expansion were undertaken. In 2002, the city of Philadelphia developed a comprehensive program offering mass screening in every high school in the city. Yet, after 5 years and 85000 tests, Chlamydia and gonorrhoea prevalence rates appear to remain steady (Anschuetz et al., 2008).

Failure to reduce prevalence could be explained by a variety of reasons: incomplete assessment of the population, high mobility, sexual contacts between high school students and others not enrolled in schools, inability to reach core group members, inadequate adoption of partner delivered therapy and insufficient frequency of screening, in light of high rates of re-infection, which typically occurs within a few months of the initial infection (Gaydos et al., 2008). If repeated screenings and treatment of infected individuals are not making a difference in the prevalence of Chlamydia and gonorrhoea overtime, should such screening continue? This question has been answered with multiple cost-effectiveness studies.

A meta-physics analysis of these studies indicates that such screening is cost-effective when prevalence of Chlamydia is in the range of 3-10% (Fisman et al., 2008). Still, there is a pressing need to develop new population based approaches that may be more successful in reducing STD, over the long term, rather than merely offering never ending screening, and treatment services. Neither sex education nor abstinence-only education appears to have had any appreciable impact on sexual behavior and subsequent STD risk (Trenholmet et al., 2008).

Despite periodical medical screening of students, there were still high rates of infection. It is however important to realize that screening alone cannot impact on rates of infection, as it indicates the trend of infection. Results of screening should be intended for management and control of infections. This study carried out medical examinations on students who self-reported illness which were not clinically confirmed.

This was done so as to reach the core group in the student population. Results can be used to inform policy makers on which way to go in terms of intervention programs and also to adequately budget for resources.

In 2007, WHO and UNICEF initiated a Global Action Plan for Pneumonia (GAPP) to increase awareness of pneumonia as a major killer of children and to develop a unified and equitable approach towards pneumonia control (Greenwood et al., 2007). In order to increase child survival, countries should focus on four areas that offer the best prospects for pneumonia control, namely vaccines, case management, nutrition and environment (Greenwood, 2008). Environmental interventions, such as improvement of indoor air quality through cleaner fuels and better stoves, may prevent pneumonia and should be encouraged (WHO & UNICEF, 2009). In addition, prevention and management of HIV infection is also perceived as a major area that needs to be addressed to prevent pneumonia.

The foregoing literature has outlined gaps in methodological approaches in research done to show decline in prevalence rates of communicable diseases. This study addressed sampling gaps by executing statistical sampling procedures and examined causes of variability which were not assessed.

#### k) *Impact of Economic Crisis on Communicable Disease Transmission and Control*

The economic downturn of the past decade is the result of a financial crisis whose scale is unprecedented in the post war period. With its proximal origins in overly complex credit instruments (Wade, 2009), the crises initially led to a tightening of private sector credit, and ultimately the collapse of several financial institutions, sharp increases in public sector debt and decline in global trade, markedly lower and in some cases negative GDP growth, and rising unemployment in many industrialized countries (OECD, 2009).

Although the early signs suggest that a fragile recovery is underway (Pandoan, 2010), it is clear that recent economic damage, principally inflicted during 2008-2009, has led to a severe economic hardship for many governments and citizens across the world. The effects of the financial crisis will almost certainly linger beyond any economic recovery. Inevitably, therefore, concerns have been raised that control of communicable diseases could have been and will continue to be adversely affected by budgetary constraints as well as the social effects of recession (Marmot & Bell, 2009; Stucker et al., 2010).

For example, some countries have cut budgets for infectious disease control, risking disruption of treatment and/or the exacerbation of drug-resistance (WHO, 2007). Pharmaceutical companies report declines in sales of prescription drugs, especially in

countries with high reliance on out-of-pocket spending. Workers have been reluctant to take sick days, fearing unemployment while increasing the risk of communicable disease transmission at work (Barmby & Laruem, 2009).

Marked rises in communicable disease incidence during previous economic crises and downturns raise concerns about the current situation. During the 1990s, countries of the former Soviet Union and Eastern Europe experienced a devastating economic crisis, as GDP fell by one-third on average. Concurrently, the incidence, prevalence and mortality of tuberculosis rose markedly, and worsening treatment led to the emergence of drug-resistant strains (Shilova & Dye, 2000).

HIV also increased from relatively low pre-crisis levels; outbreaks of diphtheria (Markina et al., 2000) and tick-borne encephalitis and leptospirosis (Stoilova & Popivanova, 1999) also occurred. These effects outlasted the immediate crisis period; today, some countries from Central and Eastern Europe and former Soviet Union have not been able to achieve Millennium Development Goal (MDG) number 6, "to halt or reverse the spread of TB and HIV" (WHO, 2008).

Even in the absence of economic crisis or downturn, communicable diseases disproportionately affect vulnerable groups. In a review of the European literature, this effect could be found in every single EU Member State (Semenza & Giesecke, 2008). A separate study comparing wealth distribution and TB rates across EU Member States demonstrated a strong correlation between income equality and lower TB rates (Suk et al., 2009). Thus, health inequalities, whose importance has been thoroughly documented by WHO Commission on Social Determinants of Health (CSDH, 2008), may be as relevant for communicable diseases as they are for non-communicable diseases. The study found out that environmental changes in vector habitats may occur due to economic downturn, which could increase contact rates between humans and disease vectors.

In an analysis of cost-effectiveness of HIV interventions, mass media campaigns were found to be the most cost effective for a general population, because of the large reach and the low cost per person served (Cohen et al., 2004). Mass media was effective in the STOP AIDS campaign launched in Switzerland (Dubois-Arber et al., 1997), and is believed to be responsible in part for the decline in HIV in Uganda, mediated by decreasing numbers of sex partners and increases in condom use (Kirby, 2008).

Mass media campaigns are now being used for STD and other infectious diseases in many countries and in the USA, albeit sponsored by commercial interests; marketing of Human Papillomavirus (HPV) vaccine has resulted in at least 25% uptake by teenage girls in just a 1-year period (CDC, 2010). Mass media in America is currently dominated by messages that

encourage people to be impulsive (Chandra et al., 2008). Studies have shown that people are responsive to negative media messages than positive ones (Dijksterhuis et al., 2004) and are influenced by media, even when they are not aware of it (Law & Braun, 2000). The economic impact on school infrastructure has not been documented. These include public health intervention programs as bed spacing in hostels, desk spacing in classrooms and provision of other related amenities by school management. These are proxy indicators on economic impact on prevalence rate of communicable diseases in secondary schools.

#### *l) Communicable disease burden in Africa*

Communicable disease is one of the major causes of illness in Africa (CDC, 2013). A major contributing factor to this burden of disease is inadequate access to safe water and sanitation infrastructure (Boschi-Pinto et al., 2008). Diarrhea, one of the communicable diseases, causes an estimated 1.87 million deaths per year, mostly in children less than 5 years of age in developing countries (GoK, 2004).

The African Region has, in general, the highest pneumonia and influenza burden of global child mortality. Although it comprises about 20 percent of the world's population of children aged less than 5 years (UN, 2006), it has about 45 percent of global under-5 deaths and 50 percent of worldwide deaths from pneumonia in this age group (UNICEF, 2013). By contrast, More than 90 percent of all deaths due to pneumonia in children aged less than 5 years take place in 40 countries. Even more striking is that according to the official estimates from WHO for the year 2000, two-thirds of all these deaths are concentrated in just 10 countries (WHO, 2007): Nigeria (204 000), the Democratic Republic of the Congo (126 000), Ethiopia (112 000) and Niger (46 000) among others.

On 12th May 2006, the Ministry of Health of Djibouti confirmed her (and the sub regions) first human case of H5N1 avian influenza virus (WHO, 2007). The patient, a two-year old girl from a small rural village in Arta District, developed symptoms on 23rd April. Vanessa and Walkty in their studies recognized the important role school aged children play in the epidemiology of influenza (Vanessa et al., 2011; Walkty et al., 2011). A study conducted on perception of Health Care Workers (HCW) found out that HCW perceived surfaces as safer to touch than patient skin, in spite of a research that has proven that touching one contaminated surface can spread bacteria to up to the next seven surfaces touched (Anne, 2011). Prevalence of intestinal parasite infections may be attributed to poor environmental conditions and personal hygiene, and inadequate supply of drinking water, and waste disposal system which does not correspond to approved standards (Fatma & Ibrahim, 2011).

The mode of infection is by contact between the susceptible individual and the infected environment. Secondary students, especially day scholars, interact with the under- 5 year olds (who are a high risk group) at home and also with fellow students at school. It is therefore of significance to find out the contribution of this interaction to pneumonia and other communicable disease prevalence rates in schools. This study tried to answer this question.

The African continent is said to hold the vast majority of the world's HIV infected population. It is estimated that in 2007, of the 33.0 million people living with HIV/AIDS, 22.0 million of them lived in sub-Saharan Africa (UNAIDS, 2008). Young people (under 25 years old) account for half of all new infections worldwide.

In sub-Saharan Africa the most common mode of transmission of HIV is through heterosexual intercourse. The risk of infection increases with the number of sexual partners. High rates of partner exchange, the practice of certain types of sexual intercourse and the presence of anal or genital lesions combine to increase the risk of HIV infection (Akol, 2000). Having sex under the influence of alcohol is dangerous because alcohol impairs judgment. In Uganda, there are more male than female counterparts who have sex when drunk. There is need to ensure that youth are sensitized on the dangers of getting drunk (UBOS & Macro International, 2006).

Condom and vaginal microbicide gel use among young people plays an important role in the prevention of transmission of HIV and other sexually transmitted infections, as well as unwanted pregnancies. Although the use of condoms can reduce the risk of sexually transmitted diseases and unwanted pregnancies, most sexually active youths in sub-Saharan Africa do not consistently use condoms because they are expensive for them or they do not know where to get them among other reasons (Eaton & Araoye, 2008). This study by Eaton & Araoye implicates socio-cultural and religious factors as a hindrance towards negotiating safer sex. Knowledge about HIV transmission and ways to prevent it are less useful if people feel powerless to negotiate safer sex with their partners.

Despite the fact that HIV/AIDS epidemic is increasingly affecting almost all development sectors, it is widely asserted that the basic education sector in sub-Saharan Africa has been progressively affected (Bernnett & Whiteside, 2002; Carr-Hill et al., 2002; ILO, 2004a; UNICEF, 2000; Wobst & Arndt, 2004). Indeed the impact of HIV/AIDS on the basic education sector has serious implications for the effectiveness and efficiency of the sector. The number of school days lost due to illnesses by both students and teachers keeps increasing. Surveys in sub-Saharan Africa continue to indicate that young people between 15-24 years harbor serious misconceptions about HIV and how it is

transmitted (Cohall et al., 2001). Even though it is now common knowledge that the HIV agent cannot be transmitted through mosquito bites, many people still believe that mosquitoes are a good vehicle for HIV transmission. Both the survey and knowledge gap among the youth places secondary students in a high risk group of HIV infection.

Diarrhea remains a major cause of illness related to unsanitary conditions, especially among children in developing countries (Zianghao et al., 1999). Assessment of the situation in Africa exhibits a huge problem. By 2000, Africa had the lowest water supply coverage of any region, with only 62% of the total 800 million people living in Africa having access to improved water supply; the situation being very worse in the rural areas with only 47% compared to 85% in the urban having access to water supply; again sanitation coverage was at 60%, varying from 84% in the urban areas to 45% in the rural areas, and further assessment in the sub-Saharan Africa shows that only 39% and 34% have access to safe water and sanitation respectively (WHO, 2000).

The picture of poor water supply and sanitation coverage as observed above can only be understood by horrifying burden of diseases directly linked to unsanitary conditions. For example, in Malawi alone, in 2000 about 33 000 cases of cholera were reported in the country which resulted in about 1000 deaths; and diarrhea prevalence was 28% in the population while in children under-five, it is estimated at 18% qualifying it as one of the major causes of morbidity and mortality among the children (GoM, 2000).

In rural and peri-urban areas of most developing countries, the use of sewage water for irrigation is a common practice. As waste water is often the only source of water for irrigation in these areas, eating fruits and vegetables that have been irrigated with contaminated water and eaten raw is one way that *E. coli* can be ingested. *E. coli* can also be found in raw milk from cows or other milk producing animals that carry the bacteria on unclean udder, and can also be found in fresh meat (Vernozy-Rozand et al., 2002).

The findings that deaths from malaria and its prevalence is highest in the African Region suggests that malaria is associated with poverty, which is consistent with the results of numerous other studies that have found socio-economic development to be more important than climate/weather in determining malaria prevalence and mortality (Tol & Dowlatabadi, 2001; Bosello et al., 2006; Beguin et al., 2011). In other words, it is more important to pursue sustainable economic development rather than reductions in climate change. Since reduction in cases and deaths from malaria are a result of human intervention, this indicates that its incidence and deaths are more sensitive to human actions than to changes in climate/weather

therefore need to intensify malaria prevention intervention programs.

Recent resurgence of malaria in the East African highlands involves multiple factors ranging from climate and land use change to drug resistance, variable disease control efforts, and other socio-demographic factors (Hay et al., 2002). But malaria is extremely climate sensitive tropical disease, making the assessment of potential change in risk due to past and projected warming trends one of the most important climate change/health questions to resolve. Zhou et al., (2004) provide new insights towards answering this malaria/climate question.

Relationship between temperature and malaria parasite development time inside the mosquito (extrinsic incubation period, EIP) shortens at higher temperatures (Jonathan & Oslon, 2006), so mosquitoes become infectious sooner. Minimum temperature for positive development of *Plasmodium falciparum* and *Plasmodium vivax* approximates 18°C and 15°C, respectively, limiting the spread of malaria at higher altitudes. There is also a relationship between increasing altitude and decreasing mosquito abundance in African highlands.

Projecting into the future, (GoZ, 2006) have compared climate suitability maps for malaria in the topographically diverse country of Zambia and found that the projected warming from global climate models would make the country's entire highland area climatologically more favorable to support malaria by year 2050. Kisumu County is malaria endemic which made its choice more significant in this study.

Large epidemics of malaria elsewhere have been associated with climate and temperature anomalies such as in Uganda (Lubanga et al, 1997). Changing landscapes can significantly affect local weather more acutely than long term climate change. Land cover change can influence microclimatic conditions, including temperature evapo-transpiration, and surface runoff (Peter et al., 2010) all key to determining mosquito abundance and survivorship. Open, treeless habitats experience warmer midday temperatures than forested habitats and also affect indoor hut temperatures.

As a result, the gonotrophic cycle of female *Anopheles gambiae* was found by Peter et al. (2010) to be shortened by 2.6 days (52%) and 2.9 days (21%) during day and raining seasons, respectively, compared with forested sites. Similar findings have been documented in Uganda where higher temperatures have been measured in communities bordering cultivated fields compared with those adjacent to natural wetlands, and the number of *Anopheles gambiae* S.I per house increased along with minimum temperatures after adjustment for potential confounding variables (Einterz & Bates, 1997).

As expected, the prevalence of *P.falciparum* in African school age children varies widely from area to area, even within the same country, depending on the level of transmission. For example, in Uganda 14- 64% of school age children were parasitaemic at any one time, with parasite rate depending upon transmission setting and season (Nankabirwa et al., 2010; Pullan et al., 2010; Nankabirwa et al., 2014; Kabatereine et al., 2011). In Senegal, The Gambia, and Mauritania, the prevalence of infection in school age children ranged from 5 to 50% (Daiet al., 2008; Oduro et al., 2013) with prevalence rates showing marked seasonal variation.

Survey conducted in school age children in the south west province of Cameroon (Nkuo Akenji et al., 2002; Kimbi et al., 2013) found parasite rates in school age children of about 50%, with a lower rate among those living higher up Mount Cameroon. A 2009 analysis of household surveys, undertaken between 2005 and 2009 in 18 African countries, found that school aged children were the group least likely to sleep under an ITN the previous night, with between 35% and 42% of school aged children being unprotected (Noor et al., 2009). Similar low usage rates have been observed among school children in Cameroon (Tchinda et al., 2012), Uganda (Pullan et al., 2010; Nankabirwa et al., 2013).

There are rice irrigation schemes, sugar belt and large wetlands due to the large water mass in Kisumu County. These provide suitable breeding conditions for female *Anopheles* mosquitoes.

Tuberculosis was declared an emergency in Africa in 2005 (WHO, 2005). In 2009, there were an estimated 9.4 million incident cases of TB, most of which were in Africa. For example, the incidence rates of all forms of TB in South Africa is over 900 cases per 100 000 residents. Especially in sub-Saharan Africa, the TB epidemic has been driven by the HIV epidemic (Lalloo & Pillay, 2008).

The need to curb the epidemic was followed by the development and global implementation of World Health Organization (WHO) of a TB control program-Directly Observed Therapy (Short Course) (DOTS)- now referred to as internationally recommended strategy for the control of TB (WHO, 1994). South Africa, one country in Africa with highest burden of TB, had an estimated incidence of 218 new smear-positive tuberculosis cases per 100 000 in 2003. The country was ranked eighth in the world for total number of TB cases per country and tenth for incidence rates per population (WHO, 2005).

There is very little documented literature on the burden of communicable diseases among secondary school students in Africa. This study has filled this gap by determining prevalence of communicable diseases and causes of variability among students in secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya.

#### *m) Communicable disease intervention programs for schools in sub-Saharan Africa*

Until recently, malaria transmission in most malaria endemic areas of sub-Saharan Africa was moderate or high and control measures subsequently focused on the protection of young children and pregnant women. However, enhanced control efforts have recently reduced the level of malaria transmission in many parts of the sub-Saharan Africa (O'Meara et al., 2010; Noor et al., 2014).

Some countries in sub-Saharan Africa have implemented best practices in communicable disease control measures. For example, in Kwazulu-Natal, school nurses are involved with immunization and check-ups, and community health projects in addition to their roles and the Natal Provincial Administration (NPA) teams are giving treatment for minor ailments at schools (Taylor et al., 1997).

School health education is an important aspect of school health service. Current approaches to school health service include the Health Promoting Networks as launched in the Western Cape (Taylor et al., 1997), and the Global School Health Initiative of the World Health Organization (WHO). In an assessment of health needs for health promoting Ashram schools in rural Wardha, Dongre et al. (2011) conducted a cross sectional survey in 10 Ashram schools using qualitative (SWOT analysis, Transect walks and semi-structured interviews for teachers) and quantitative (survey) methods.

Hemoglobin examination of all children was done using WHO hemoglobin color scales. Anthropogenic measurements such as height and weight of each child were obtained and quantitative data was entered and analyzed using Epi\_info (version 6.04e) software package. Some of the results were that 86, 75 and 110 out of 1287 children examined had scabies, fungal infection and multiple boils on their skins respectively, and 66 had worm infestation. About 398 (94.3%) boys and 342 (97.2%) girls did not know the modes of transmission of HIV/AIDS. It is notable that there was a high prevalence of communicable diseases in Ashram school environment.

In a study by Mohiabi et al., (2010) to identify and describe the barriers that may hamper successful implementation of the school health services at all levels of governance and to recommend strategies to overcome such barriers in the Mpumalanga and Gauteng Provinces of South Africa, a qualitative, explorative and descriptive study designs were used. The data collection of choice was focus group discussion which was conducted with all stakeholders in school health programs. The findings were barriers related to governance, for example lack of national policy guidelines for school health services and failure of government to prioritize school health services; program related issues, such as lack of intersectoral collaboration and unrealistic nurse-learner ratios; management

related issues, such as lack of support by management and managers' limited knowledge on the Health-promoting schools initiative; and community related issues as health professionals not including the community in school health programs.

Avinash Puri et al. (2008), in their study on solid waste management and its impact on health, evaluated solid waste management practices in order to find out its link with occurrence of vector-borne disease. It found out that most schools have limited storage spaces. The waste is mostly of biodegradable nature, in other schools open dumping of the garbage was noticed, which caused health hazards as well as fly nuisance.

Hygiene is the practice of keeping oneself, one's living and working environment clean in order to prevent illness and disease (CDC, 2009). Hand washing is an act of cleaning the hands with water or another liquid with or without soap or other detergents for sanitary purpose of removing soil and /or micro-organisms. Good hand washing involves the vigorous, brief rubbing together of all surfaces of lathered hands, followed by rising under a stream of water. Hand washing suspends micro-organisms and mechanically removes them by rinsing with water. Therefore, the fundamental principle of hand washing is removal not killing.

Lack of or ineffective hand washing can provide good route for disease transmission. These include diseases ranging from self-limiting infections like diarrhea (Rotaviruses); to potentially life threatening diseases like poliomyelitis and hepatitis A virus infection. Hygienic measures, including hand washing with soap before meals and after use of toilets, have been found to prevent hepatitis A virus infection (WHO, 2012). Hand washing, if regularly and properly practiced by students will go a long way in reducing prevalence of communicable diseases, hospital admission due to these diseases (loss of learning time), thereby making them grow well and healthy. In Nigeria, diarrhea prevalence rate is 18.8%; is one of the worst in sub-Saharan Africa and above the average of 16% (Limlim, 2008; Asekun-Olorinmoye et al., 2014).

Little information has been documented on burden of communicable diseases among students in secondary schools. The causes of variability in their prevalence are also lacking. These gaps have been addressed by this study.

#### *n) Communicable disease burden in Kenya*

Communicable diseases still dominate the morbidity profile in Kenya. Majority of Kenyans continue to seek treatment in health care facilities for ailments that can be controlled through preventive and promotive measures (WHO, 2007). Currently, the health expenditure in rural areas account for 30 percent of the government's spending on health services. The burden of communicable diseases is high, with malaria as the

leading cause of morbidity (30%) (WHO, 2005) followed by respiratory diseases (24.5%). Malaria prevalence is 14% and HIV prevalence is 7.4%, the rate being higher in women (8.5%) compared to men (5.6%).

Tuberculosis (TB) control has been more challenging, with high TB prevalence of 319 per 100 000, TB/HIV co-infection prevalence of 53% and a growing threat of MDR/XDR-TB (WHO, 2008). Recently, positive gains are emerging in malaria and HIV control, owing to availability of resources and improved coordination for scale up of targeted interventions, and these need to be intensified to reach universal targets. Persistent poverty and low water and sanitation coverage have contributed to sanitation related illnesses like cholera (GoK, 2005).

In Kenya, student population has increased since the introduction of free schooling (GoK, 2012). In public secondary schools, the number has risen from 1.1 million students in 2008 to 1.85 million in 2012. These high enrollment figures underline the need for "health promoting schools" (Musembi, 2010; Mathooka, 2009; WHO, 2007). It offers opportunities for and requires commitment to the provision of a safe and health-enhancing social and physical environment" (Mead et al., 1999).

In addition to the convention on Rights of the Child, which Kenya is a signatory; the constitution of Kenya (GoK, 2010) establishes rights that have a direct bearing on health promotion in schools, such as the following: Section 34(5) No child shall be denied admission to a public school; and Section 38(1) No person shall employ a child of compulsory school going age in any labor or occupation that prevents such a child from attending school. In Children Act 2011 (GoK, 2011), Section 9 states "Every child shall have a right to health and medical care the provision of which shall be the responsibility of the parent and the government."

However, joint assessment of Kenya's Health Sector Strategic Plan (KHSSP) in November 2012 identifies gaps based on the outcome of the implementation of the second National Health Sector Strategic Plan (NHSSP II), a predecessor to KHSSP 2012-2017. The assessment brings out the fact that the future looking sections of NHSSP II did not systematically capture the "strategic shifts" that KHSSP will do "differently" to improve performance. While the strategy is very articulate on "what" needs to be achieved in the coming five years, it is inadequate in elaborating "how" strategic directions, imperatives and targets will be achieved (GoK, 2012).

Several overarching policy priorities, such as Rights-based approach, community health, and people – Centre systems are not well captured. Strategies and interventions to work with other ministries have not been spelled out. There is 'disconnect' between the situational analyses, the policy objectives and priorities of the KHSSP. School Health Service and its role as a strategy

and an intervention tool, which could be a flagship program is not mentioned (GoK, 2012).

Since January 1999, pediatric malaria admissions have significantly declined at all hospitals in Kenyan coastal region. This trend was observed against a background of rising or constant non-malaria admissions and unaffected by long term rainfall throughout the surveillance period. By March 2007, the estimated proportional decline in malaria cases was 63% in Kilifi, 53% in Kwale, and 28% in Malindi. Time-series models strongly suggest that the observed decline in malaria admissions was a result of malaria-specific control efforts in the hospital catchment areas. Severe anemia (exacerbated by malaria) is often the attributable cause of death in areas with intense malaria transmission (Adan, 2010).

Increased canopy in western Kenya is negatively associated with the presence of *Anopheles gambiae* complex and *Anopheles* in natural aquatic habitats (Hay et al., 2002). In artificial pools, survivorship of *Anopheles gambiae* larvae, in sunlit open areas was 50 times the survivorship in forested areas and also related to assemblages of predatory species (Beguinet et al., 2011). In short, deforestation and cultivation of natural swamps in the Kenyan highlands create conditions favorable for the survival of *Anopheles gambiae* larvae, making analysis of land use change on local climate, habitat, and biodiversity central to malaria risk assessment.

There is strong evidence that malaria is an important cause of school absenteeism. A study in Kenya found that malaria caused a loss of 11% and 4.3% of the school year for the primary and secondary school students respectively (Leighton & Foster, 1993). Another study, undertaken in the highlands of Kenya, estimated that during a malaria endemic, malaria related absenteeism in primary school pupils varied between 17% and 34%. The estimated annual loss of school days in Kenya due to malaria in 2000 was between 4 and 10 million days (Brooker et al., 2000). A country wide survey conducted in 480 Kenyan schools between September 2008 and March 2010 found an overall prevalence of malaria parasitaemia of 4%, but this ranged from 0 to 71% between schools (Gitonga et al., 2010, 2012). There is very little information on the prevalence of other communicable diseases between schools.

There is strong evidence that, at the individual level, regular use of an insecticide treated net (ITN) or long lasting insecticide treated nets (LLIN) substantially lowers the risk of malaria (Lengeler, 2004; Lim et al., 2011) and that additional indirect "hard" effect is achieved when a high level ITN coverage is obtained. Thus, most LLIN distribution programs now aim at achieving universal coverage. Low usage rates have been observed among school-age children in Kenya (Atieliet et al., 2011). In western Kenya, where malaria transmission is perennial and high, a community based

trial of permethrin-treated mosquito nets showed that the use of ITNs halved the presence of mild anemia in adolescent school girls aged 12 to 13 years but was less effective in preventing anemia among school girls aged 6 to 10 years (Leenstra et al., 2003).

In Kenya, the expansion of coverage of both insecticide treated nets (ITN) and effective artemether-lumefantrine (AL) therapy has occurred. Between 2004 and 2005, ITN coverage among children aged <5 years rose from 7% to 24% and by the end of 2006, had risen to 67% (Noor et al., 2007). Despite delays in implementing the revised drug policy supporting the use of artemether-lumefantrine (AL) (Amin et al., 2007), over 85% of rural clinics had AL in stock between August and December 2006. Larval control may be effective in urban areas and few other epidemiological situations in Africa, such as the Kenyan highlands (Fillinger & Lindsay, 2011), but it is generally not cost effective approach to malaria control in rural areas of sub-Saharan Africa.

Apart from determining malaria prevalence rates in schools, this study also evaluated Insecticide Treated Nets (ITNs) use coverage in schools as a measure of good public health practices towards minimizing malaria infection. It also evaluated school environment as a habitat for mosquito breeding. Other intervention programs that were evaluated include personal protection measures (protective clothing, repellents) or community protective measures (use of insecticides).

School safety was identified as one of the many factors that promote learning in schools hence the development of Safety Standards Manual for Schools in Kenya (GoK., 2008). Public health safety of the learner is central to the provision of quality education in any country. While this is true for all learners at all levels of education, it is particularly crucial for learners in schools in view of their level of interaction. Ministry of Education, Kenya (2008) report that children in schools are vulnerable to public health threats due to inappropriate school facilities and infrastructure. These may include poorly constructed classrooms and hostels, insufficient and broken down toilet facilities, gender insensitive location of toilet and bathroom facilities, poor solid and liquid waste management and inadequate clean safe water provision. Such threats need to be addressed through carefully thought out measures and strategies to minimize incidences of communicable diseases.

Safety in Physical infrastructure of schools should comply with the provisions of the Education Act (Cap 211), Public Health Act (Cap 242) and Ministry of Public Works building regulations/standards. These provisions stipulate the size of a classroom, in terms of length and width should be 7.5metres by 5.85metres or 7.5metres by 6.0metres to accommodate 40 learners. It further recommends that for dormitories, space between beds should be at least 1.2metres. The pit latrines should be at least 15metres from a borehole or well or

water point. Student-toilet ratio should be: the first 30 learners; 4 holes/closets; the next 270 learners: one extra hole/closet for every 30 learners; every additional learner over 270 learners: 1 hole/closet per 50 learners. Proper considerations should be given to staff sanitation, with at least one hole/closet for 12 persons. A study by Miguel and Kremer (2004) found out that infected children perform poorly in tests of cognitive functions, and that treatment reduced school absenteeism by one-fourth.

The introduction of free schooling in Kenya as a means of meeting Millennium Development Goals (MDG) on education means that the role of school health services needs to be redefined due to increased enrollment in schools. Increased enrollment may be a predisposing factor to increased incidences of communicable diseases. This study tried to find out if tuberculosis (TB) prevalence rate in schools with large enrollment is statistically significant compared to schools with low enrollment. A focus on high school students is important because students spend a lot of their time at school, away from home. Transmission of infections in students can easily occur due to large concentration of students in school (CDC, 2007).

Most secondary students are in the age bracket 15-59 years which has been reported to be a TB high risk group (Ayesha, 2010) where most new infections occur. This study evaluated the public health interventions like ventilations in hostels and classrooms, and also desk and bed spacing in classrooms and hostels respectively. The analysis tried to find out if there is a significant association between hand washing and tuberculosis prevalent rates among others. This was necessitated by the fact that some people cover their mouth with their hands when they sneeze or cough. Other than evaluating health seeking behavior of students, tuberculosis index cases were subjected to in-depth interview to get an understanding of the disease burden in the school. This would contribute towards the transformation of the public health services in schools. There is little information on the prevalence of communicable diseases among students in Kenyan Secondary Schools. The documented literature is only on the prevalence of communicable diseases nationally. Secondary school students are a neglected sector of the population.

#### *o) Communicable disease burden in Kisumu County, Kenya*

Kisumu County suffers from high burden of communicable diseases as well as emerging threats. According to the Kenya Demographic and Health Survey, (GoK.,2009) the County has one of the highest HIV/AIDS prevalence rates at 17% higher than the Nyanza region rate of 15.3%, and national rate of 7.4%. Kisumu West District, one of the districts in the County, suffers from high levels of HIV/AIDS, Diarrhea, Malaria,

Multi-Drug Resistant TB (MDR-TB), and other preventable diseases. More than half of the population relies on surface water as the main source of drinking water. Forty two percent (42%) of the households share toilets while 21% have no toilets (KWHDS, 2011).

HIV prevalence rates have not changed significantly in Kisumu County. In 2006, official statistics showed that the prevalence rate was 11.1 percent (UN-HABITAT, 2006). In 2008, the prevalence rate remained roughly the same as in 2006, at 11.2 percent (GoK, 2010; UNDP, 2013). Women are infected at relatively younger ages than men and tend to have much higher HIV prevalence rates than men (KNBS, 2008). This study tried to find answers to the HIV prevalence rates among secondary students.

Studies such as Glynn et al (2001) indicate that behavioral factors do not fully explain the discrepancy in HIV prevalence between men and women. One possible explanation is that women intend to have older partners, but a more plausible cause for women having high HIV infection rates is that they have greater susceptibility to the virus (other risk factors for HIV/AIDS in women include the inability to negotiate safer sex and economic privation). Moreover, a 2007 randomized controlled trial of 2784 men aged 18-24 years suggests that men in Kisumu district (now Kisumu County) have lower HIV prevalent rates because male circumcision significantly reduces the risk of HIV acquisition in younger men (Bailey et al., 2007). To date, most interventions have focused on high risk groups such as commercial sex workers, single persons, married persons and infants. However, there is need to focus on secondary students as well because they are also in high risk age group (18-24 years).

Prevention is the most effective strategy against the spread of HIV/AIDS. Although condoms remain an effective method of HIV prevention, many women in Kisumu County do not have the negotiating power to make their husbands/partners use male condoms (Cohen et al., 2004). Voluntary Medical Male Circumcision (VMMC) is another important strategy against HIV infection. Unfortunately, this often leads to the misconception among young men that they can practice unsafe sex and will not contract HIV simply because they have been circumcised.

Tuberculosis infection rate in Kisumu was 32 percent in 2008 and the cure rate was 31.8 percent (GoK, 2008). Given that the WHO target for case detection is 70 percent, Kisumu County needs to do much more to reduce tuberculosis infection. A worrying trend is that many people with HIV also contract TB and vice versa (GoK & UNDP, 2010). Knowing prevalence rate of tuberculosis in schools will help in designing a better disease surveillance system for schools for prevention, early detection and treatment of the infected. Kisumu County is malaria endemic (AMREF, 2004) and also prone to floods and has sugar plantations, large

water mass and rice irrigation schemes. It has one of the highest HIV/AIDS prevalent rates in the country (GoK, 2010); while at the same time has Kisumu City, one of the fastest growing urban centers in Kenya. A motor highway connecting Kenya and Uganda also traverse it. It is for this reasons that the study focused attention to direct contact diseases (HIV/AIDS); airborne diseases (Tuberculosis, Pneumonia); diseases with environmental reservoirs like malaria, typhoid, and diarrhea among others. It is from this study that infections between environmental contexts and transmission cycle components were analyzed.

Improvements in Public health services are key to reversing upward trend in mortality and morbidity due to infectious diseases across all ages. These include safe water, and better sanitation. Education for girls and mothers (Oindo et al., 2009) will also save children's lives. In Oindo and others (2009) study which aimed at investigating the characteristics associated with households experiencing Under 5 Mortality in Nyanza region, a complete household census was used as data collection method in some of the sub-locations in six districts of the region. Frequencies and cross tabulations were performed to determine the dominant characteristics to describe the population. Kisumu and Nyando districts in Kisumu County were among the six districts investigated. The results were that use of Insecticide Treated Nets (ITNs) was lower among households with child deaths in Kisumu district.

Very little literature has been documented on the burden of communicable diseases among secondary students in Kisumu County. Kisumu County region is Malaria endemic, however, very little is known about prevalence of Malaria among its secondary student population.

*p) Methodological Approaches Relevant to Current Study*

Schools have become overcrowded, and as recorded, overcrowding results in outbreaks of communicable diseases including cholera, tuberculosis and typhoid fever among others. The big question is; are the intervention programs community friendly? Why are communities not realizing declines in prevalence rates of communicable diseases?

The process of identifying the source of an epidemic is retrospective in nature. In this study, by asking respondents to report if they have been ill in the last two weeks, the researcher modified retrospective research design to suit the current situation. The germ theory recognizes that all communicable diseases are not only caused by microorganisms, but also as a result of biological, socio-demographic and environmental issues. It is for this reason that this study collected data on socio-demographic (Appendix 1) and environmental issues that affect the health of students in schools (Appendix 4).

Anne McLaughlin (2011) in her study did not correlate touching one contaminated surface and spread of bacterial with the number of Community Health Workers (CHW) or number of elementary school children. This study correlated the variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among students within and between schools. Rate of contact with contaminated surface may be hypothesized to increase with congestion.

Hand washing programs among school children is one of the public health intervention programs that may have a lasting effect in reducing school absences (Miguel and Kremer, 2004); however, this study evaluated hand washing, solid and liquid waste management, use of ITNs and other intervention programs (Appendix 5) to prevent spread of communicable diseases in schools. The same gaps exist in the study carried out by Vanessa et al., (2011) and also in the study by Walkty et al., (2011).

The study by Fatma and Ibrahim (2011) on prevalence and predisposing factors regarding intestinal parasite infections among rural primary school pupils in Egypt performed clinical procedures on fecal samples and evaluated sanitary facilities and conditions of hygiene, as well as conditions of hygiene of pupils. Lester et al. (2008) in their study to describe a secondary school outbreak of tuberculosis, case and contact management was conducted by Mid Central District Health Board according to national guidelines. Students were asked to get informed consent for Montoux testing, and students and staff were screened at school clinics by medical professionals.

In this study, students who self-reported illnesses in the last two weeks (Appendix 1) at the time of data collection and had not been medically examined were taken for medical examination for pneumonia, diarrhea, malaria and tuberculosis. Urine, stools, blood and sputum formed samples for the laboratory tests which were performed at the health facilities in the neighborhood of the sampled schools. Rapid urine test to identify presence of bacteria that causes pneumonia; positive test for *Clostridium difficile* confirming diarrhea; blood smear testing positive confirming presence of malaria parasite; and a positive culture for *Mycrobacterium tuberculosis* confirming diagnosis of tuberculosis (ALA, 2013; Christina et al., 2013; Nicholas et al., 2014; Sterling et al., 2011) were the procedures carried on the samples. Students who self-reported clinically confirmed illnesses produced clinic/hospital cards to confirm that clinical procedures had been undertaken. This group of respondents became index cases in this study. Anin-depth interview (Appendix 3) was held with this group to explore more on their illnesses.

Dongre et al. (2011), in their study conducted a cross-sectional survey in schools using qualitative (SWOT analysis, Transect walks and semi-structured

interviews for teachers). In Mohiabi et al. (2010) study to identify and describe the barriers that may hamper successful implementation of school health services, data collection of choice was focus group discussion which was conducted with all stakeholders in school health programs. This study collected data on school health programs using focus group discussion (Appendix 2) with stakeholders; and performed a Transect Walk during environmental health survey using observation checklist for the schools sampled.

Government of Kenya, through MoE (2008), in their Safety Standards Manual for schools, defines school safety as “measures undertaken by the learners, staff, parents and other stakeholders to either minimize or eliminate risky conditions or threats that may cause accidents, bodily injury as well as emotional and psychological distress”. The same manual lists threats to school safety as accidents, school violence and harassment, lack of adequate healthcare and nutrition, lack of sensitivity to sexual maturation challenges for boys and girls, armed conflicts and insecurity, and hostile school environment.

This study evaluated (Appendix 4) bed and desk spacing in hostels and classrooms respectively, and other public health intervention programs, as predisposing factors to communicable disease prevalence rates. There are no records to show incidences of common health risks in secondary schools and causes of their variability. This study determined communicable diseases prevalent rates and factors affecting their variability among students.

q) *Conceptual Framework*

This Conceptual Framework has been developed with the goal of showing how health outcomes (dependent variables) among students are affected by the state of the environment they are in (independent variables). The health outcomes are modified by the intervening variables that include resources and their control, public health intervention programs adopted, national health system of a country, and the school health services offered in every school. A summary is shown in Figure 2.1.

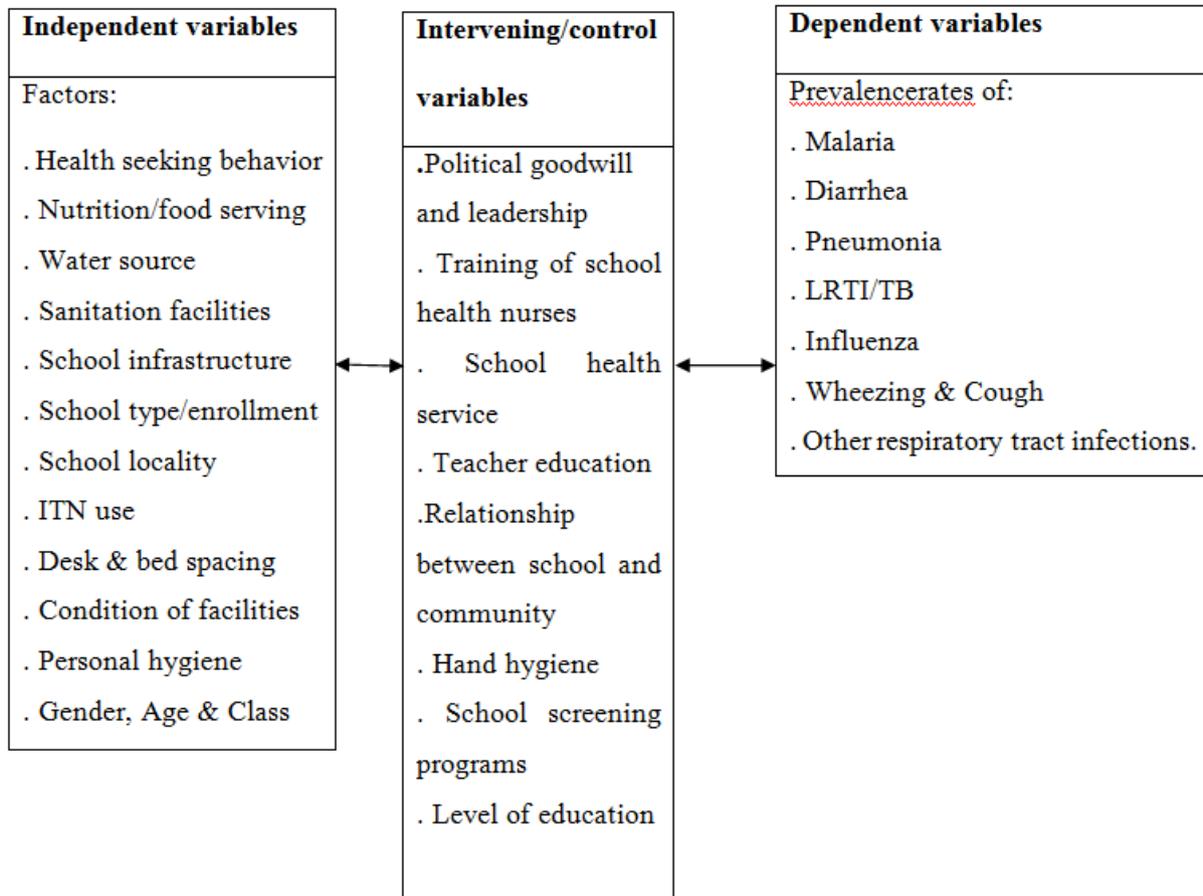


Figure 2.1 : Conceptual Framework on the link between independent, intervening and dependent variables

(“Source” Research, 2015)

As students spend a significant proportion of time in school buildings and school grounds, it is vital

that their environments are as safe as possible. To make or not to make the environment safe require a concerted

effort of those who own and control resources, policy makers and implementers, students, school managers and the community where the school is built.

The physical school environment has a strong influence on student's health for several reasons. First, the environment is one of the primary determinants of student's health: contaminated water supplies can result in diarrheal diseases; air pollution can worsen acute respiratory infections and trigger asthma attacks. Second, relative to their body weight, they breathe more air, consume more food and drink more water than adults. Their exposure to any contaminant in air, water, or food will therefore be higher than experienced by adults (Weiss & McMichael, 2004; Wilcox and Colwell; Parkes et al., 2003).

WHO defines a health promoting school as "one that constantly strengthens its capacity as a healthy setting for living, learning and working" To ensure that this is achieved, intervening variables like resources and their control, public health intervention programs must be controlled, among others. Their control is derived from the guiding principle of the socio ecological approach to health of the Ottawa Charter (1986) which encourages reciprocal maintenance; taking care of each other, our communities and our natural environment.

## CHAPTER THREE

### III. MATERIALS AND METHODS

#### a) Introduction

This chapter gives a detailed account of research area and study population. Research design, sampling strategy, data collection and data analysis

procedures are tabulated in tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, and 3.4 respectively.

#### b) Study Site

Kisumu County is characterized by a rapidly growing population, high population density, water scarcity, falling food production, and low resilience to climate change (KNBS & UNICEF, 2013). The County was chosen because it is malaria endemic region with a very large area under agricultural irrigation. It is also adjacent to a large pool of water and wetlands. Schools adjacent to pools of water and wetlands are more susceptible to water related and water borne diseases (GoK, 2010).

Kisumu County experiences intermittent supply of clean and safe water (CGoK, 2013). Where the distribution of water systems functions intermittently, contaminated water may infiltrate into the pipelines. These facts indicate that many people in Kisumu County, students included, are at risk of contracting communicable diseases such as diarrhea, typhoid, intestinal parasite infections, trachoma, and schistosomiasis among others (AMREF, 2004). However, there are no records to show prevalence of communicable diseases in schools.

Kisumu County is located in Nyanza region and constitute six constituencies/sub - Counties and lies within 00003' latitude and 34045' longitude (Maps of world, 2012) (Figure 3.1). The population is 968 909 (Male 48.9%, Female 51.1%) with population density of 474.1 people per square kilometer against national figure of 65.3 per square kilometer, and age distribution of 0-14 years (43.5%), 15-64 (53.3%) and 65+ years (3.2%) (GoK, 2009). Figure 3.1 shows Map of Kisumu County in Kenya.

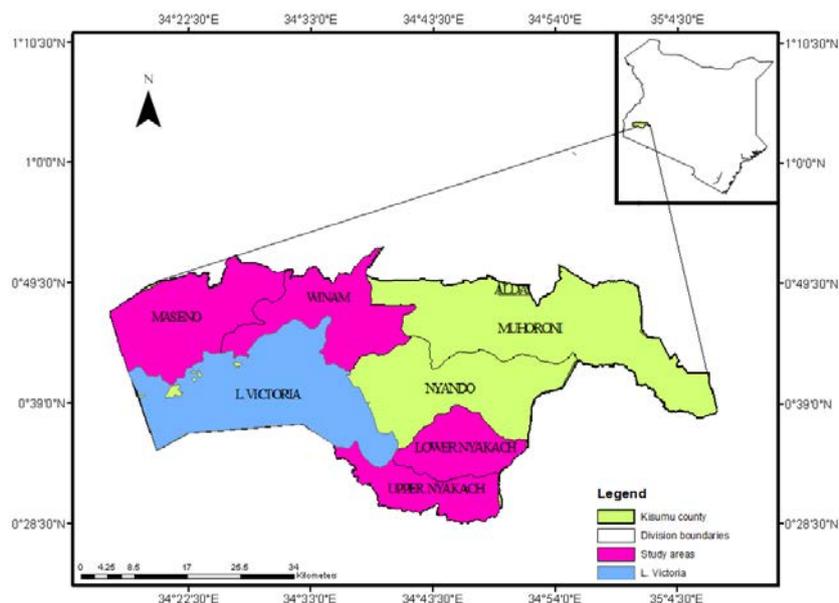


Figure 3.1 : Map of Kisumu County, Kenya. Source: Research (2015)

There are 187 secondary schools with an enrollment of 60 230 (31 902 males and 28 328 females) (GoK, 2013)

i. *Poverty Level*

The rate of poverty in Kisumu County is estimated at 45 percent with an average dependency ratio of 100:87. The number of people living in extreme poverty is 60 percent against the national poverty level of 45.9 percent (GoK, 2010). Accordingly, 47.8 percent of women are in employment, 49.8 percent males and 49.5 percent females live in absolute poverty where they earn a monthly salary below KES 1 562. The proportion of the population who are food poor stands at 61 percent (CGoK, 2013).

ii. *Socio-economic activities*

Kisumu County performs below the national average on most socio-economic indicators. The

iii. *Network of Health Facilities*

County scores a 0.49 on the Human Development Index (HDI)- a composite measure of development that combines indicators of life expectancy, education attainment and income (UN, 2013). This falls below the national average of 0.56. Poverty is prevalent and manifests itself in other socio-economic outcomes such as poor nutrition, health, and education, as well as lack of access to basic services. The majority of the population is employed in fishing and agricultural activities, with some limited opportunities in commercial ventures and public service within Kisumu City (GoK, 2010). The livelihoods of most County residents depend on fisheries and rain-fed small scale farming, practices that are highly vulnerable to environmental degradation and the effects of climate change (UNDP, 2010).

Table 3.1 : Network of Health Facilities in Kisumu County, Kenya

Type of Facility	Number of Facilities
Teaching and referral	1
Level 5	3
Level 4	5
Dispensaries	53
Health Centers	6
Other	30

Source: CGoK (2013)

Infant Mortality Rate in the County was 95/1000 while the Under 5 Mortality Rate was 149/1000. Prevalent diseases are Malaria, HIV/AIDS, Diarrheal diseases, Intestinal worms, Respiratory disorders.

c) *Study Population*

The study population were students in Secondary schools in Kisumu County; schools; sub - Counties; education zones; toilets; waste depots; water points; hostels/halls, kitchen facilities, sewage systems and management and other boarding facilities; classrooms; clinic/hospital cards; school nurse; boarding master/mistress/matron, and house masters/mistress of the schools. Others were School Principal, Board of Management/Parents Teachers Associations, and teachers, School Cateress, School Principal, Non-Governmental Organizations, and the Red Cross. Education Ministry's Quality Assurance and Standards Officers, Public Health Officers, Area Chief, School Kiosks and School Canteens.

Table 3.2 shows distribution of schools, staff and students in secondary schools in Kisumu County by sub - Counties and Zones.

The first three sub - Counties with the highest coefficient of variation were selected for the study. These were Nyakach, Kisumu East and Kisumu West. Coefficients of variation by gender and school type were used to determine sample sizes for students by gender and school sample size by type.

**Table 3.2 :** Distribution of zones, schools, student enrollment and coefficient Of variation by sub - Counties of Kisumu County in Kenya

Sub - County	No. of Zones	No. of Secondary Schools	Student enrollment	Coefficient of variation by gender and type of school
Kisumu East	8	48; Girls & Boys = 39, Boys only = 5, Girls only = 4	Boys = 8558, Girls = 6792	Gender School Type G B G&B 14.21 2.139 2.679 20.85 11.27
Kisumu West	5	34; Girls & Boys = 28, Boys only = 3, Girls only = 3	Boys = 6334, Girls = 5523	10.51 1.606 1.606 14.97 9.169
Kisumu North	3	19; Girls & Boys = 16, Boys only = 2, Girls only = 1	Boys = 2737, Girls = 2151	4.544 1.069 0.537 8.557 3.571
Nyando	2	14; Girls & Boys = 10, Boys only = 2, Girls only = 2	Boys = 3423, Girls = 2796	5.683 1.069 1.069 5.349 4.642
Muhoroni	5	25; Girls & boys = 20, Boys only = 5, Girls only = 0	Boys = 3605, Girls = 3660	5.985 2.676 0.000 10.69 6.076
Nyakach	8	47; Girls & Boys = 38, Boys only = 6, Girls only = 3	Boys = 7245, Girls = 7406	12.03 3.209 1.605 20.32 12.31
<b>Total</b>	<b>31</b>	<b>Girls &amp; boys = 151, Boys only = 14, Girls only = 22 Total = 187.</b>	<b>Boys = 31902, Girls = 28328 Total = 60230</b>	<b>52.962 47.038 100</b>

G= Girls' only schools, B= Boys only schools, G&B= mixed schools); last column entries derived by the researcher.

Source: GoK (2013)

d) *Research Designs*

Table 3.3 is a summary of research design against measurable variables/variable indicator for each specific objective in this study.

Table 3.3 : Specific objectives against measurable variables/indicator and research design

Specific Objective	Measurable variable/Variable indicator	Research Design
i) To determine prevalence rates of communicable disease infection among secondary students.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Self-reported illness in the last two weeks: Malaria, diarrhea, STIs, Tuberculosis, Pneumonia, HIV/AIDS, Influenza, Typhoid fever, Wheezing and cough.</li> <li>Clinic card/Hospital card</li> </ul>	Survey
ii) To determine the cause of variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among students within and between schools.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Determined prevalence rates</li> <li>School type</li> <li>School size/enrollment</li> <li>School locality</li> <li>School infrastructure</li> <li>Gender</li> <li>Age</li> <li>Class</li> <li>School kiosks/canteens</li> </ul>	Correlational
iii) To evaluate public health intervention programs for optimal use in secondary schools.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Health seeking behavior</li> <li>Kitchen facilities</li> <li>Education Ministry quality assurance systems</li> <li>Water source, sewage system and management</li> <li>Solid/liquid waste management</li> <li>ITN use</li> <li>Mosquito breeding control</li> <li>WASH programs</li> <li>Bed &amp; desk spacing</li> <li>Ventilation in hostels &amp; classrooms</li> <li>Personal hygiene</li> </ul>	Evaluation

Survey research design was used in specific objective (i) to gather primary data for computing communicable disease prevalence rates (dependent variable) based on school type, enrollment and locality (independent variables). This data would be used in planning and policy development. It was also used to evaluate the effectiveness of a particular public health behavior intervention. It enabled the researcher to gain knowledge about behaviors and attitudes of students and other stakeholders.

Correlational research design was used in specific objective (ii). This is because the researcher wanted to explore the extent to which two or more variables co-vary, that is where changes in one variable are reflected in changes in another (Creswell, 2008). The researcher collected at least two scores for each participant as each score represents each variable being studied. In this study, the two scores were from, for example, computed prevalence rates and age or gender or class level of the respondent.

The researcher adopted evaluation research design focusing on public health behavior change adherence among students and school staff to meet specific objective (iii). For example, the researcher evaluated whether schools adhere to bed spacing regulations as given out in the Ministry of Education guidelines; and also whether water, sanitation and hygiene interventions are adhered to as contained in the Ministry of Health guidelines. Some of the questions that

answered included whether intervention is in place, is the intervention reaching the target population, challenges of implementation, and what appears to be working among others

e) *Sampling Strategy*

The six sub – Counties were selected purposively based on coefficient of variation by gender of students and type of school. Based on this, three sub - Counties (Nyakach, Kisumu East and Kisumu West) with the highest value of coefficient of variation were used for the study. The three sub – Counties have a student population of 41 858 (22 137 boys and 19 721 girls) (GoK, 2013).

Since the prevalence of communicable diseases among students in Kisumu County was unknown and population of secondary students was greater than 10 000, a representative cluster samples size was estimated using Fisher’s *et al.* (2004) formula:

$$n = \frac{z^2pq}{d^2} \dots\dots\dots \text{Equation 3.1}$$

- Where n = sample size
- z = standard deviant (1.96) at 95% confidence interval
- p= known characteristic about target population
- q = 1- p (probability of failure)
- d= precision desired = 0.05.

Where prevalence is unknown and population is greater than 10 000, p = 0.5, q = 1- 0.5 = 0.5.

Then  $n = 384$ . However a sample size of 400 was selected after calculation to determine sample size from 60 230 student study population to increase representativeness and also to cater for any attrition (Bob, 2002). Students' sample size for each sub – County was based on coefficient of variation by gender of students. A total of 212 (Nyakach 70, Kisumu East 82 and Kisumu West 60) male students and 188 (Nyakach 71, Kisumu East 65 and Kisumu West 52) was selected for the sample.

Education zones in each of the three sub – Counties were selected by cluster sampling technique. The zones were clustered by number of students and type of school. Six zones (30% of 21 zones in the three sub – Counties) were then selected based on the highest coefficient of variation. Schools in each zone were arranged by type (Boys only, Girls only and Mixed (boys and girls) schools). Thirty percent of schools, 38 out of the total 129 in the three sub – Counties were selected based on coefficient of variation by school type (30 Boys

and Girls/Mixed schools, 5 Boys only schools and 3 Girls only schools).

For Boys and Girls/Mixed schools: 12 were selected from Nyakach, 12 from Kisumu East and 6 from Kisumu West; for Boys only schools: 2 were selected from Nyakach, 2 from Kisumu East and 1 from Kisumu West; for Girls only schools: 1 school was selected from each of the sub – Counties. Each school type in each zone was then arranged and selected based on the strength of coefficient of variability. Students were clustered and selected by cluster sampling.

The Key Informants which were sampled purposively included boarding masters/mistresses, senior teachers, Parents and Teachers Association (PTA) representatives, board of management, student leaders, and senior cook in- charge

Table 3.4 shown is a summary of sample size and sampling method of each study population unit.

**Table 3.4 :** Study population unit in Kisumu County against sampling method and sample size of study units in Kisumu County, Kenya

Study population unit	Sampling Method	Sample Size
Sub - Counties	Cluster	3
Education Zones	Cluster	6
Schools	Cluster	38: 30 mixed schools, 5 boys only schools and 3 girls only schools
Students	Cluster	400: 212 boys and 188 girls
Facilities (hostels, toilets, water points, waste depots, sewage system and management, school kiosks and local markets adjacent to schools, dining halls/kitchen, ITNs)	Purposive	38 = number of schools
Key Informants (Boarding masters/mistress, House masters/Mistress, school nurses, Board of Governors, PTA representatives, NGOs, Kenya Red Cross, Education Ministry Quality Assurance and Standards Officers, Public Health Officers)	Purposive	12
Focus Group Discussion (FGD)	Quota	8-12 for each sub-County
Observation	Purposive	10

**f) Data Collection**

Masebo (2010) states that triangulation involves using multi-methods or more than one source of data in the research of social phenomena. In this study a number of data collection methods were used.

Table 3.5 is a summary of data management tool, sample size and sampling method against each population study unit.

**Table 3.5 :** Study population unit in Kisumu County against sampling method, sample size, data management tool and appendix

Study population unit	Sampling method	Sample size	Data management tool	Appendix
Students	Cluster	400	Questionnaire, in-depth interview guide, medical examination, camera , voice recorder	I, III
Facilities (hostels toilets, water points, sewage system and management, solid waste depots, dining hall/kitchen, school kiosks/canteens and local markets adjacent to the school)	Purposive	38	Interview guide, camera, voice recorder	IV
Key Informants	Purposive	12	Questionnaire	II
Focus Group Discussion	Quota	8-12 for each zone	FGD guide	II
Observation	Purposive	10	Observation Check List	V

A questionnaire (Appendix I) was used to collect the survey data. It was administered to all respondents (students) randomly selected in each stratum. The questionnaire collected information on the characteristics of the respondents including gender, age, and class level. It was also used to collect information on dwelling units (hostels and classes) and other information on ownership and use of treated mosquito bed nets, state of respondents' health in the last two weeks at the time of data collection, bed spacing, personal hygiene, and source of drinking water.

Respondents self-reported in the questionnaire their morbidity status in the last two weeks and produced clinic/hospital cards to confirm the self-reported illnesses of communicable diseases. These formed the secondary data of communicable diseases in schools. Students who self-reported illnesses of communicable diseases which were not clinically confirmed were taken for medical examination at the health facilities nearest to the school. Stools, urine, sputum and blood samples were examined. The observed medical examination results of interest were blood slides testing positive for Malaria parasite; a positive culture for Mycobacterium tuberculosis confirming tuberculosis infection; rapid urine test to identify presence of bacteria that cause pneumonia; and positive stool tests for Clostridium difficile confirming diarrhea. The results of medical examinations formed the primary data on communicable diseases in schools. All students who were found ill were booked for treated at health facilities nearest to their schools.

Focus Group Discussion guide (Appendix II) was used to collect data which complemented the information collected through in-depth interviews with index cases. The purpose of conducting group discussion was to listen and gather information from different people. It helped to obtain a better understanding of how people feel issues, services or products. It enabled individuals to recall facts that other

group members had forgotten. Focus group discussion was conducted with 8 – 12 quota sampled members to corroborate the data from the field. It involved identification of thematic categories and coding them by repeatedly reading the transcripts. The major themes were finally identified after all the categories were coded. In-depth interview (Appendix III) was conducted with Index Cases to create a direct interaction between the researcher and the respondents. Boyce and Neal (2006) defines in-depth interview as a qualitative technique that involves conducting a small number of respondents to explore their perspective on a particular idea, program or situation. In this study, an in-depth interview was conducted with Index Cases who identified themselves from the questionnaire (Appendix I). (Index Cases are defined as respondents who self-reported confirmed clinical cases of the respiratory system and other infectious diseases in the last two weeks at the time of data collection). This enabled the researcher to get their perspective, definitions of situations and construction of reality (Punch, 2005).

In-depth interview (Appendix III) was done on a one-on-one basis as to engage respondents who do not feel free to participate in a group discussion (Appendix II). By doing this the researcher got valuable insights on the thematic situations as perceived by the respondent. The researcher was aware of the challenges of data collection using in-depth interview method. The challenges included ambiguity resulting from qualitative analysis particularly for less experienced researchers. The researcher was involved in all data collection procedures. This was done to minimize possibility of bias. A voice recorder was used during the interview and later transcribed.

Data on the state of facilities used for communicable disease intervention was collected using interview guide (Appendix IV). Issues it addressed were on ambient (outdoor/indoor) air quality, provision of safe drinking water, pest management, water storage facilities and spill prevention, waste management

system, and food storage .More data on intervention programs were collected by an observation checklist (Appendix V).

g) *Validity and Reliability of data instruments*

Validity encompasses the entire experimental concept and establishes whether the results obtained meet all of the requirements of the scientific research method. For example, there must have been randomization of the sample groups and appropriate care and diligence shown in the allocation of controls. While the idea behind reliability is that any significant results must be more than a one-off finding and inherently repeatable (Martyn, 2008).

i. *Validity*

*Content Validity:* Content Validity addresses the match between test questions and the content or subject (Martyn, 2009). The questionnaire for students, Appendix I, covered demographic information, morbidity and health seeking behavior, sexual activity and dietary pattern among others. Focus Group Discussion guide, Appendix II, captured groups' perception on skills-based education, communicable disease surveillance system in the school, campaigns against sexually transmitted infections, school health policy, and sanitation and hygiene practices.

An in-depth interview guide for index cases (Appendix III) collected information on experiences of index cases before they became ill and how they were coping since the onset of their illness. This corroborated information in appendix II. Interview guide for boarding masters and mistresses (Appendix IV) was on environmental health of the school. Lastly, observation checklist for schools (Appendix V) was about the general health status of the school and public health intervention programs in place. This was done to corroborate the information collected in appendices I, II, III and IV. The items on the test represented the entire range of possible items the test should cover. The data collected will be subjected to statistical tests to determine level of significance of the results.

*Face Validity:* Face Validity is a simple form of validity in which researchers determine if the test seems to measure what it intends to measure. In this study, during data collection process, the researcher validated with the interviewees and focus group discussion members transcriptions of every interview and group discussion respectively, in order to seek clarification and gain understanding of the aspects that were unclear to the researcher. Data collection tools were validated by researchers' supervisors.

ii. *Reliability*

Data collection instruments were prepared under the guidance of researchers' supervisors and a test and re-test method of reliability for the instruments was done with respondents within Kisumu County.

These were respondents who were not sampled for the research. After piloting, the respondents were debriefed to find out if there were confusing questions, and their understanding of each question. This gave an insight whether there was consistency in responses given by different groups.

To certify reliability of the instruments, a correlation coefficient was determined based on the responses given by different groups on same data collection tool. Data was qualified as reliable if correlation coefficient was > 65% (0.65). For example, the number of respondents sampled during piloting was 65 and in one question 40 respondents understood it correctly, then the coefficient of variation in that question was  $40/(60) \times 100\% = 66.7\%$ . The question was reliable and taken for actual research.

h) *Ethical Considerations*

The researcher ensured that the study was conducted within the international standard procedures for medical examinations. As a result, the procedures (medical examination) were carried out in health facilities in the neighborhood of the schools and performed by medical professionals. Verbal consent from participants was obtained prior to the commencement of focus group discussion, in-depth interviews, use of questionnaire, school transect walk during environmental health observation, and medical examination. Permission to capture some of the research sessions on tape was obtained prior to the event. Participants were informed of the intention to utilize data collected for dissertation. Research Authorization was sought from School of Graduate Studies (Masinde Muliro University of Science and Technology) and administration of Kisumu County, Kenya.

i) *Assumptions*

Meeting research objectives or answering research questions was one important aspect of research findings. To answer research questions stated herein, the following assumptions were made:

- i) Prevalence rates constructed were assumed to apply to all public schools in the county and by large the county.
- ii) Some of the respondents required to go for medical examinations at the health facilities near their schools where samples of stools and blood were taken. It was therefore assumed that all of them cooperated.
- iii) All intervention programs that were evaluated were assumed to meet World Health Organization (WHO) standards
- iv) All schools sampled for this research were aware of a "Health Promoting School" concept.

j) *Limitations*

The foreseen limitations were listed with related solutions to minimize their effects on the findings.

- i.) Caution was taken in interpreting computed prevalence information that was presented in this study because it used information from a sample of the districts and not all the districts in the county to construct the rates. The selected districts were the three with the highest values of coefficient of variation in the study units.
- ii.) Data collection to compute communicable disease prevalence rates was from students who self-reported communicable disease illnesses in the last two weeks at the time of data collection. The respondents who did not report illnesses in the last two weeks were considered to be in good health.
- iii.) Computed communicable disease prevalence rates were modified by respondents from day schools

and therefore may not give the actual prevalence rates as influenced by the school environment. This was used to answer questions on variability of prevalent rates.

k) *Data Analysis and Presentation*

Sample size of 400 was drawn from student population for this study. Table 3.6 is a summary of data analysis and presentation procedure against each specific objective.

For specific objective I, analysis of prevalence rates was based on intent-to-treat. A p value <0.05 was considered to be significant at 95% confidence interval. Chi Square was computed to show the association.

This answered a question like “is malaria prevalence rate associated with insecticide treated nets use?” or “Is diarrhea prevalence associated with water, sanitation and hygiene status of the school?” among others.

*Table 3.6* : Specific objective against measurable variable/indicator, research design, method of analysis and presentation of study units in Kisumu County, Kenya.

Specific Objective	Measurable Variable/indicator	Research Design	Method of analysis and presentation
i. To determine prevalence rates of communicable disease infection among secondary students	-Self reported illness in the last two weeks: Malaria, Diarrhea, STIs, Tuberculosis, Pneumonia, HIV/AIDS, Influenza, Typhoid fever, Wheezing and cough. Clinic card/Hospital book, medical examination	Survey	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Descriptive statistical analysis</li> <li>• Chi Square.</li> </ul>
ii. To determine the cause of variability in communicable disease prevalence rates among students within and between schools.	Determined prevalence rates, school type, school size/enrollment, school locality, gender, age, class, school kiosks, and Local Markets adjacent to the schools.	Correlational	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Descriptive statistical analysis</li> <li>• Chi Square</li> <li>• ANOVA</li> </ul>
iii. To evaluate public health intervention programs for optimal use in secondary schools.	Health seeking behavior, nutrition/food serving, kitchen facilities, water source, sewage systems and management, solid/liquid waste management, ITN use, bed spacing, aeration, personal hygiene, condom use, Family Planning method use, Education Ministry quality assurance and standards systems.	Evaluation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Descriptive statistical analysis</li> <li>• Chi Square</li> <li>• Normative evaluation</li> </ul>

For specific objective II analysis, Chi Square was used to determine the type of association (Lodico et al., 2006). For example, in this study the researcher determined association between prevalence of communicable diseases (dependent variable) and school type (independent variable). ANOVA was used, for example, it helped answer a question like “Is there a difference between Boys only, Girls only and Mixed schools with respect to communicable disease prevalent rates?” or “is there a difference between urban and rural schools with respect to communicable disease prevalence rates?”

In specific objective III, data were collected by direct observation, surveys and interviews. Computed Chi Square showed association or no association between public health interventions (the independent variable) and prevalence rates of communicable diseases among students (the dependent variable). In

addition, specific objective III was also subjected to normative research analysis. This study adopted normative implementation environment evaluation which explores the environment in which the program is delivered, considering, for example, participants, implementers, partner organizations and mode of delivery (Hirjarvi et al., 2000). Evaluation questionnaire (Appendix IV) was used to assess the public health intervention programs in place in schools. The house Masters and Mistresses were given an opportunity to comment in open questions in this section of the questionnaire, in order to explore some of the intervening mechanisms contributing to the impact of each intervention.

CHAPTER FOUR

IV. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

a) Introduction

The results are clustered in four main thematic areas based on the most important communicable diseases namely; malaria, diarrhea, and the diseases of the respiratory system (tuberculosis and pneumonia). An insight of the respondents is given by their demographic characteristics as illustrate.

b) Socio-Demographics of Respondents

Characteristics of respondents have been shown by age, gender, class/form, and by religion.

i. Respondents Age

Age of respondents was clustered in three groups: 18-21 years, 14-17 years and 10-13 years. Those who were 18-21 years were 127 (31.8%) out of 400, the age bracket 14-17 years formed 67.8% (271 out of 400), and age group 10-13 years formed 0.2% (1 out of 400) (Figure 4.1). There was a significant ( $p < 0.05$ ) variation in age of respondents ( $X^2_{3, 0.05} = 380.784$ ).

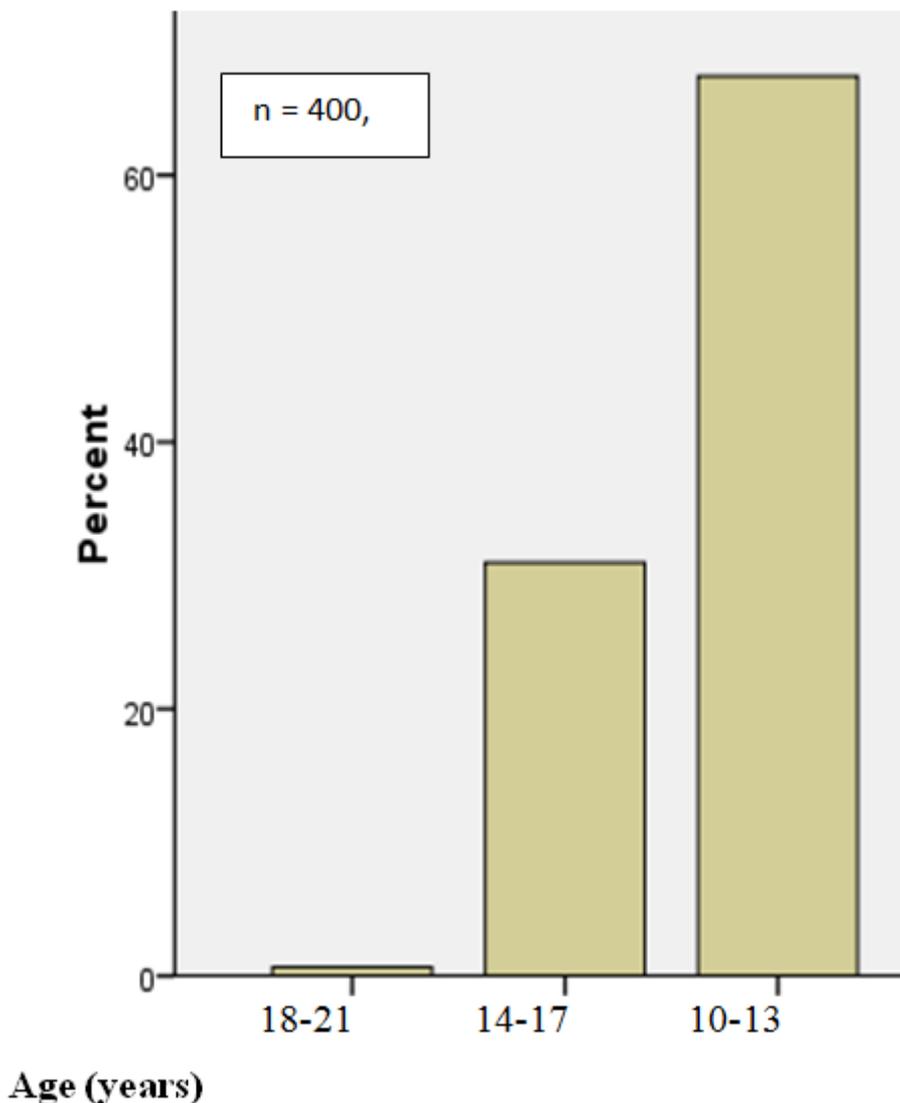


Figure 4.1 : Age distribution of respondents.

ii. Respondents gender

Male respondents formed 53% (212 out of 400) while female respondents formed 47% (188 out of 400) of student population sampled (Figure 4.2).

In form 1, male and female respondents were 19.3% each (41 out of 212) 19.7% (37 out of 188) respectively. In form 2, male respondents were 40.1%

(85 out of 212) while female respondents were 39.4% (74 out of 188). In form 3 and form 4, male proportion was 16.3% (35 out of 212) and 24.3% (51 out of 212) respectively while female proportion was 26.6% (50 out of 188) and 14.3% (27 out of 188) respectively. There was significant ( $p < 0.05$ ) variation in gender of respondents ( $X^2_{1, 0.05} = 10.652$ ).

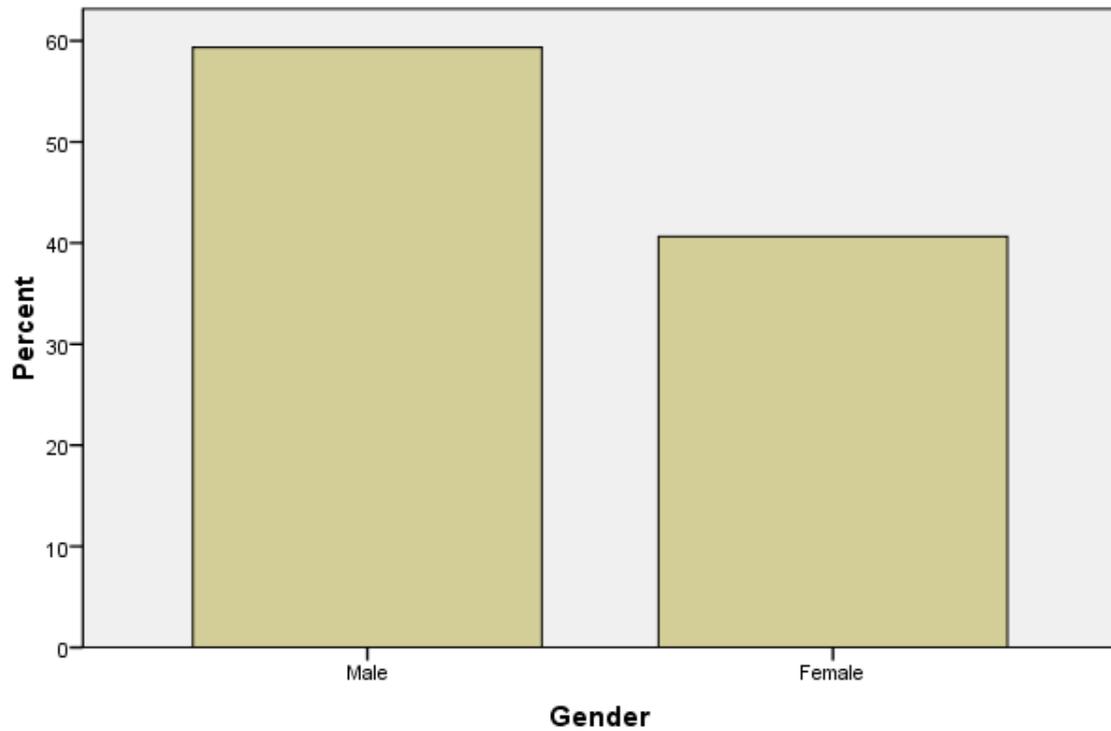


Figure 4.2 : Gender distribution of secondary students in Kisumu County, Kenya

iii. Respondents Religion

Thirty three point eight percent (33.8%), 135 out of 400 were Catholics, 17.0% (68 out of 400) Anglican; 17.2% (69 out of 400) Seventh Day Adventists; 8.0% (32 out of 400) Indigenous Churches; Muslims 5.5% (22 out of 400); those who did not belong to any church 2.0% (8 out of 400); and other Churches 16.5% (66 out of 400) (Figure 4.3). There was no significant variation in religion of students in Kisumu County ( $X^2_{6,0.05} = 1.719$ ).

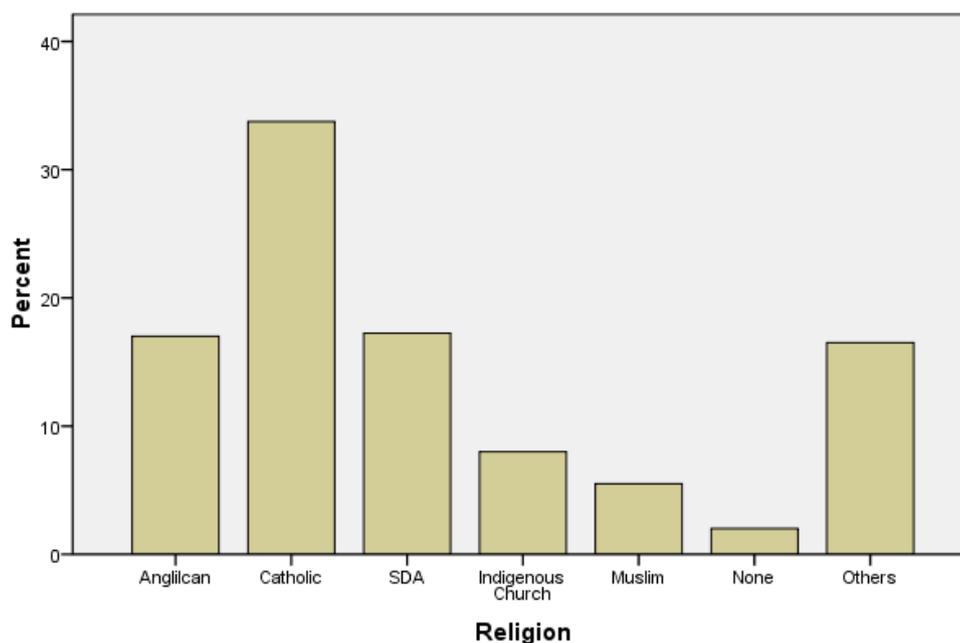


Figure 4.3 : Religion of secondary students in Kisumu County, Kenya

c) Prevalence of communicable diseases in secondary schools in Kisumu County

The most important communicable diseases among secondary students were Malaria, Diarrhea, Tuberculosis and Pneumonia. Malaria prevalence was 20.7% (20700 per 100000 students), Diarrhea 15.1% (15100 per 100000 students), Tuberculosis 7.2% (7200 per 100000 students), Pneumonia 5.2% (5200 per 100

000 students), other respiratory related infections 3.7% (3700 per 100000 students), Pregnancy related 0.2% (200 per 100000 students), other illnesses 0.2% (200 per 100000 students). There was a significant ( $p < 0.05$ ) variation in prevalence of communicable diseases among secondary schools in Kisumu County ( $\chi^2_{5, 0.05} = 252.672$ ).

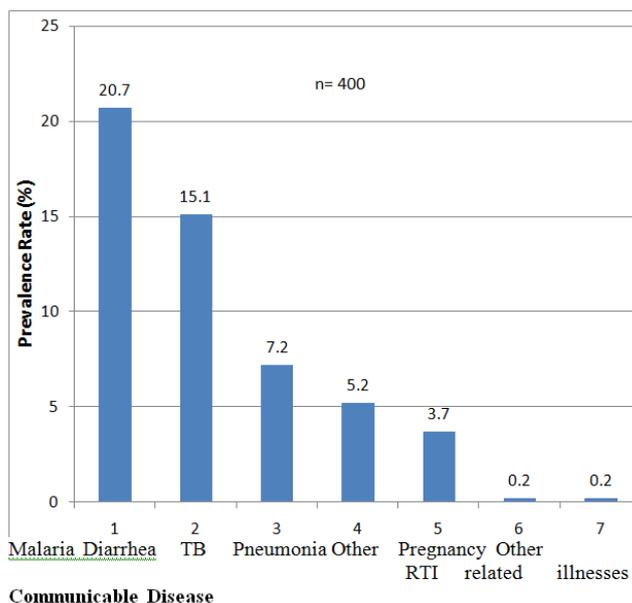


Figure 4.4 : Prevalence of communicable diseases in secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya.

Students who had positive blood smear test confirming presence of malaria parasite were 20.7%. Positive test for Clostridium difficile confirming diarrhea

was observed in 15.1% of the stool samples examined, and 7.2% of sputum samples had a positive culture for Mycobacterium tuberculosis confirming diagnosis of

tuberculosis. Rapid urine test to identify presence of bacteria that causes pneumonia was positive in 5.2% of the samples examined. Other respiratory tract infections, pregnancy related and other illnesses were also observed during the medical examinations (Figure 4.4).

d) *Causes of variability in prevalence rates between schools*

Variability in communicable disease prevalence rates are caused by various factors. The extent of link between the factors and prevalence rates are shown.

i. *Prevalence Rates against Locality of the School*

Prevalence of malaria was higher in urban (11%) schools than in rural (9.7%) schools, however, prevalence of diarrhea was higher in rural (7.8%) schools than in urban (7.3%) schools. Prevalence of tuberculosis (4.2%) and pneumonia (3.2%) were higher in urban than rural schools ( $\chi^2_{1,0.05} = 1.237$ ) (Fig. 4.5).

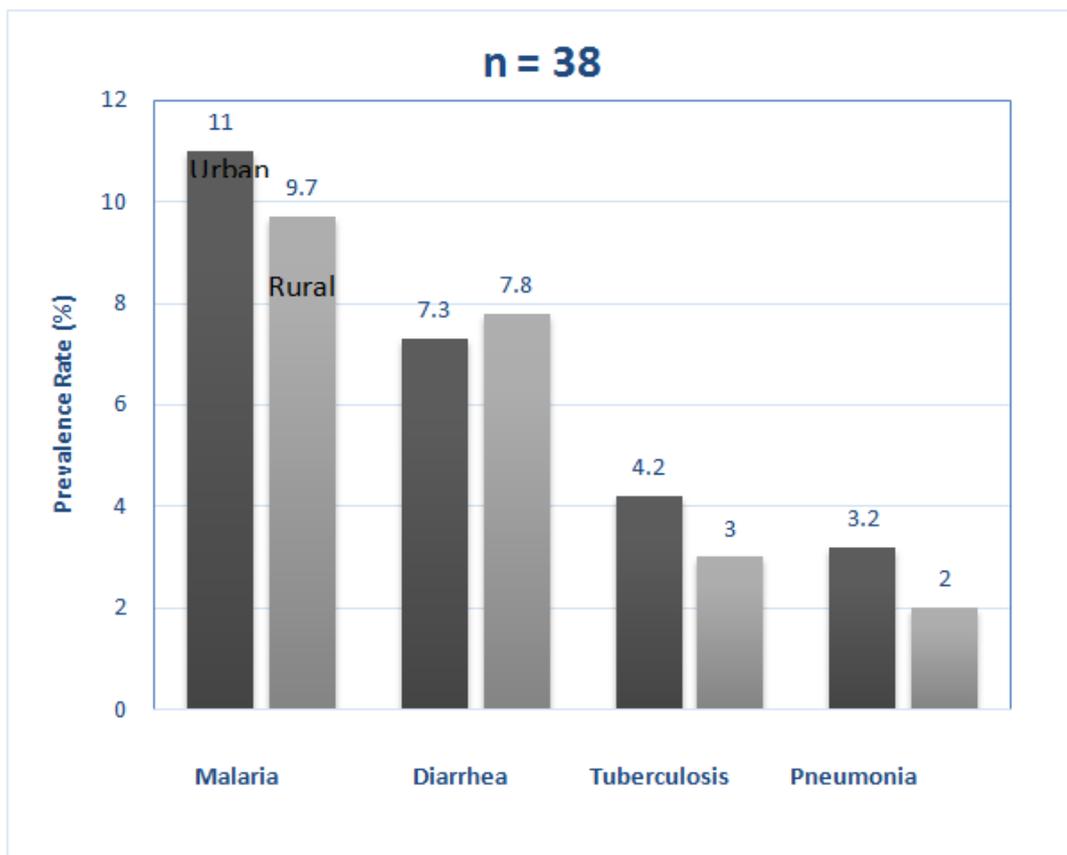


Figure 4.5 : Prevalence rates against Locality of schools in Kisumu County

There was no significant association between prevalence rates and locality of the school

ii. *Prevalence Rates against Type of School*

Prevalence of malaria was highest (7.78%) in boys' boarding schools and lowest (2.98%) in Boys' and Girls' day schools; prevalence of diarrhea was highest (7.13%) in Girls' boarding schools and lowest (2.38%) both in Boys' and Girls' day, and Boys' and Girls' day and boarding schools.

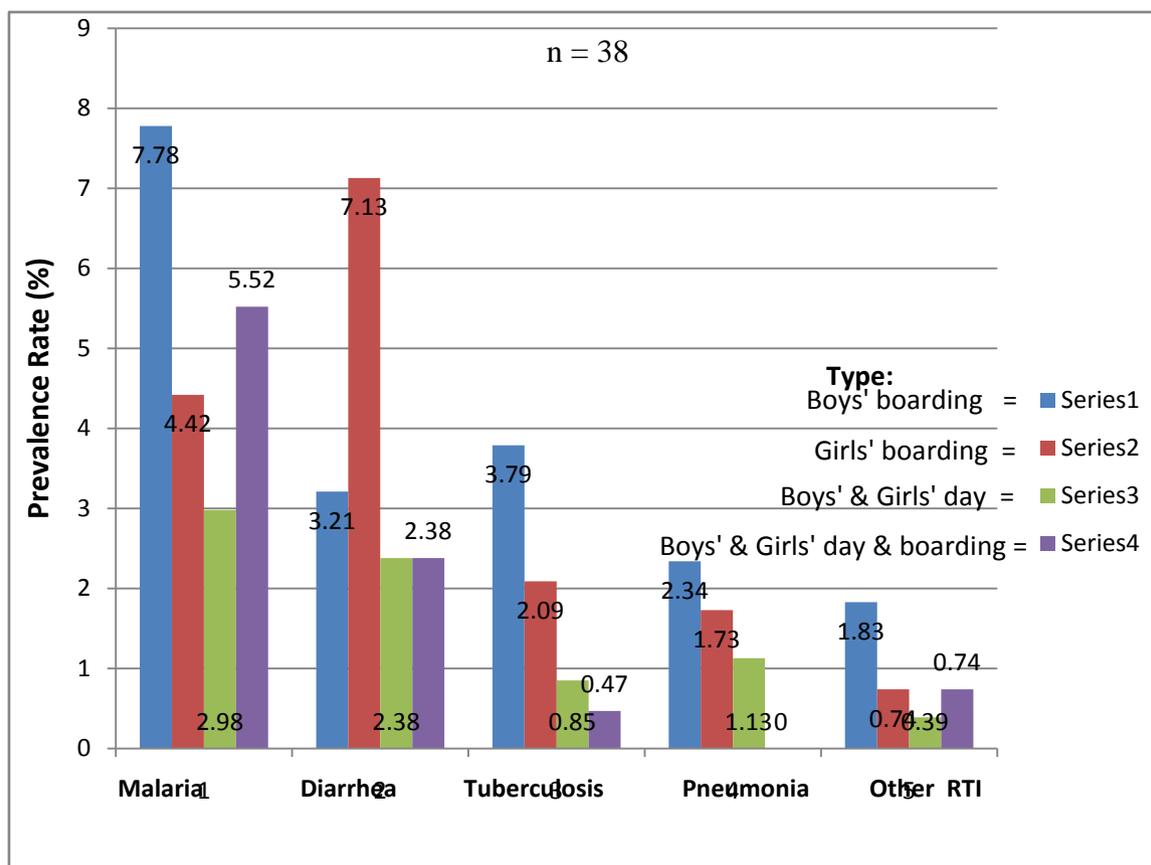


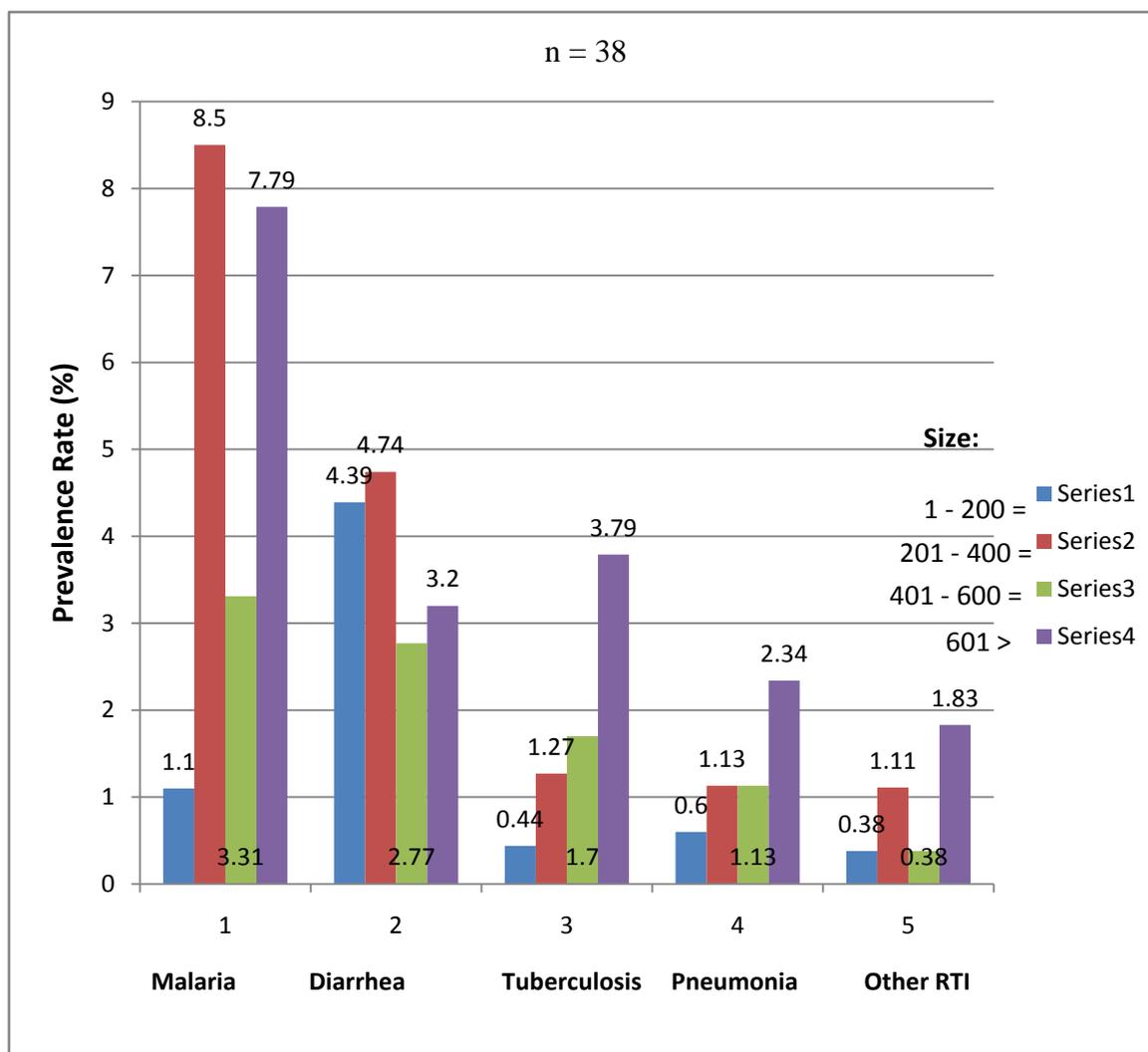
Figure 4.6 : Prevalence rates against Type of School in Kisumu County, Kenya

However, prevalence of tuberculosis (3.79%), pneumonia (2.34%) and other respiratory tract infections (1.83%) were highest in Boys' boarding schools and lowest (0.47%, 0.00% and 0.74% respectively) in Boys' and Girls' day and boarding schools (Fig. 4.6).

The Pearson chi square ( $X^2_{12, 0.05} = 15.865$ ) showed that there was no significant association between prevalence rates and type of school.

iii. *Prevalence Rates against Size of the School*

The results were such that prevalence of malaria was highest (8.5%) in schools with population 201 – 400 and lowest (1.10%) in 1 – 200 population;



Communicable Diseases

Figure 4.7 : Prevalence rates of communicable diseases against Size of secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya.

diarrhea prevalence was highest (4.74%) in 201 – 400 and lowest (2.77%) in 401 – 600 populations respectively, while prevalence of tuberculosis (3.79%) and pneumonia (2.34%) and other respiratory tract infections (1.83%) were highest in 600 and greater populations, and lowest, 0.44% and 0.60% and 0.38% respectively in 1 – 200 populations (Fig. 4.7 ). The Pearson chi square ( $X^2_{12,0.05}=18.636$ ) showed there was a significant association between prevalence rates of communicable diseases and size of secondary schools in Kisumu County.

iv. Prevalence rates against Gender of Secondary students

Malaria prevalence was highest (14.02%) among male students while diarrhea was highest (7.96%) among female students.

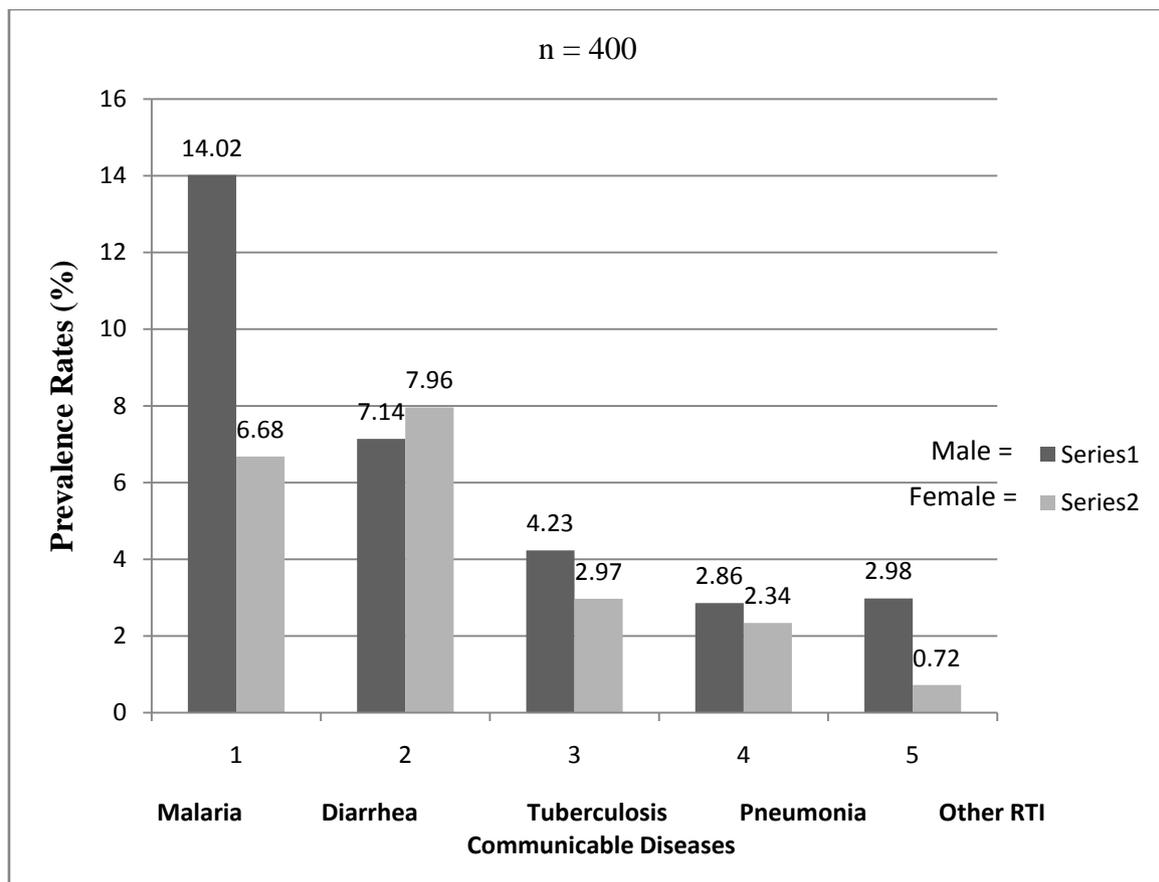


Figure 4.8 : Prevalence rates of communicable diseases against Gender of secondary school students in Kisumu County, Kenya

Prevalence of tuberculosis, pneumonia and other respiratory tract infections were highest (4.23%, 2.86% and 2.98% respectively) among male students (Fig. 4.8) than female students. There was a significant association ( $X^2_{4, 0.05}=5.723$ ) between gender and prevalence rates of communicable diseases among secondary students in Kisumu County.

World Health Organization (WHO, 2007), while addressing sex and gender in epidemic prone infectious diseases found that differences between males and females arise because of biological and as a consequence of gender based roles, behavior and power. For most infectious diseases (Fig. 4.8), difference in prevalence rates between males and females are more likely to be due to differences in exposure than to differences in immunity. For example, in many societies females spend more time at home than males during the day, and therefore, experience greater daytime household exposure to infections, for example caring for the sick, exchanging baby nappies, than males. Male students, in their normal lives, spend more time outside the households in the evening than female students, they are more exposed to mosquito bites than females.

This study has revealed that prevalence of malaria, tuberculosis, pneumonia and other respiratory

tract infections are lower among female secondary students than males. For reasons that are not well understood, a study by WHO (2003) found that females had lower mortality rates from severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) than males, a pattern that was maintained after adjusting for age. Despite scarcity of information, there are strong indications that sex and gender are important for transmission and control of epidemic prone diseases.

v. *Prevalence Rates against Age (years) of Secondary students*

Prevalence of malaria (15.90%), diarrhea (9.57%), tuberculosis (5.50%), pneumonia (4.07%), and other respiratory tract infections (2.60%) were highest among students in age bracket 14-17 years than in age group 18 and above years (Fig.4.9).

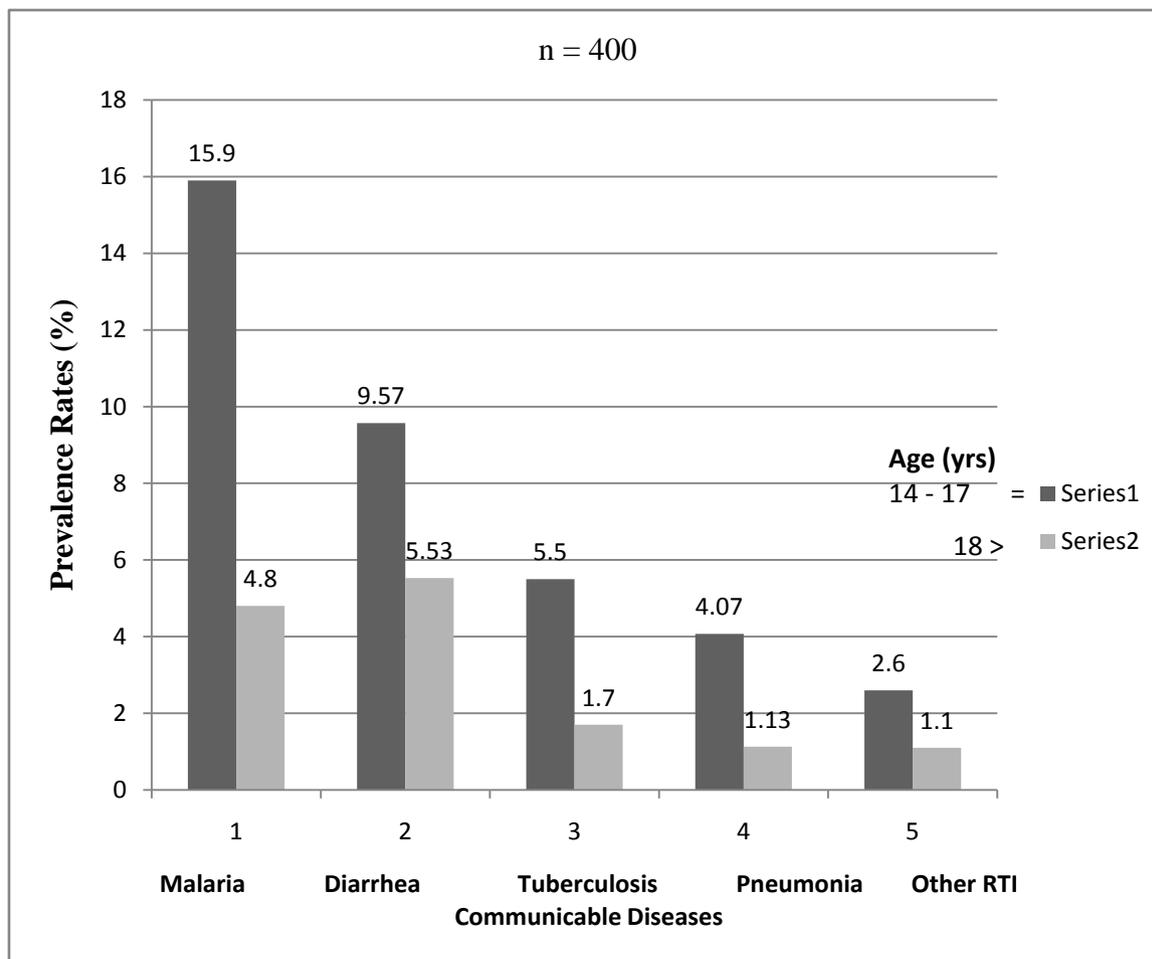


Figure 4.9 : Prevalence rates against Age of secondary students in Kisumu County, Kenya

The Pearson chi square ( $X^2_{4, 0.05} = 2.458$ ) showed there was a significant association between prevalence of communicable diseases and age of students in secondary schools in Kisumu County.

Combined data by Baker et al., (2013) from four case-control and observational studies showed that children less than five years old exposed to greater household crowding had 1.69 times the odds of pneumonia than children exposed to the least crowding. The findings of this study has shown that prevalence of tuberculosis and pneumonia is high among students where there is overcrowding in hostels and classrooms (Fig. 4.25 (a) & 4.25 (b)). It has also revealed that students in age bracket 14-17 years have more incidences of tuberculosis and pneumonia than age bracket 18 years and greater (Fig. 4.9).

vi. Prevalence Rates against Class/Form of Secondary students

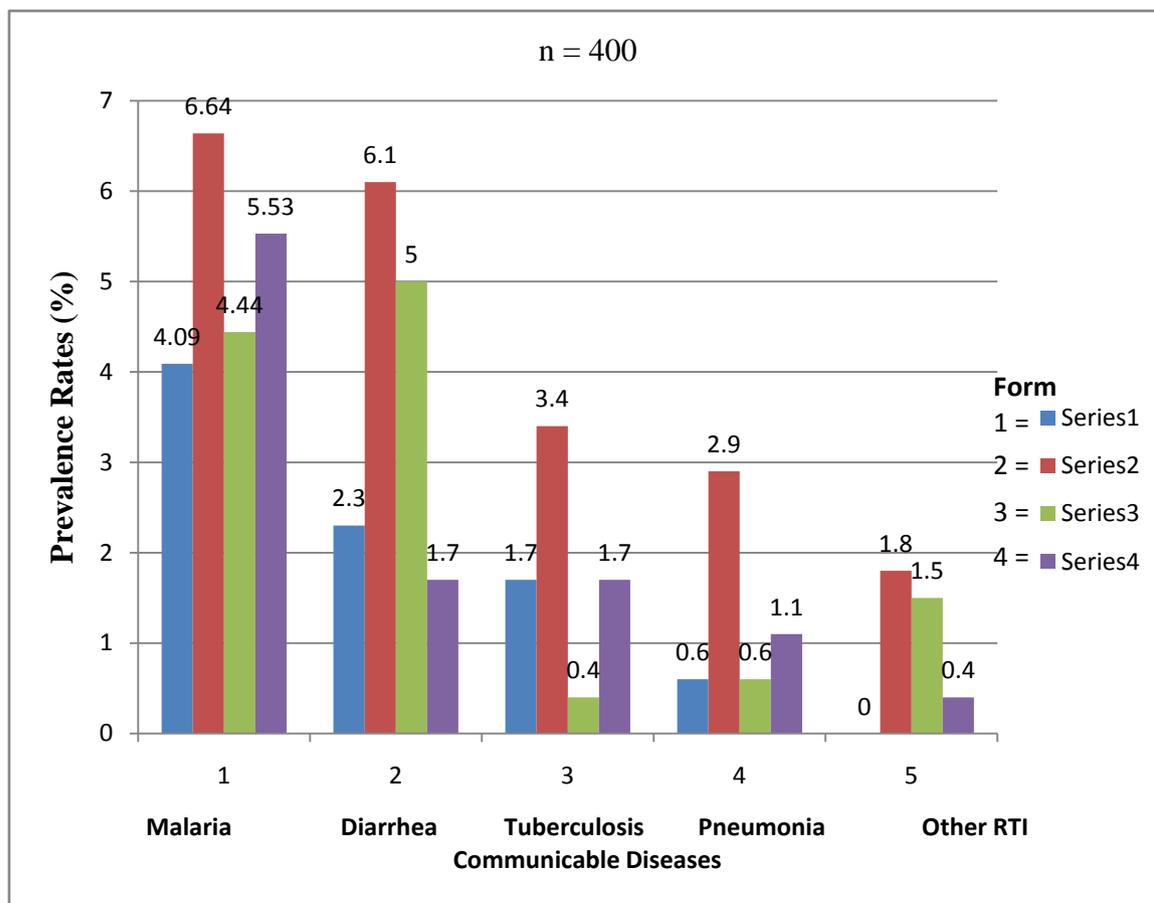


Figure 4.10 : Prevalence rates of communicable diseases against Class/Form of secondary school students in Kisumu County, Kenya

Prevalence of both malaria (6.64%) and (Fig.4.10). There was a significant association diarrhea (6.1%) were highest among Form 2 students, ( $X^2_{12, 0.05}=15.202$ ) between prevalence rates of the same is true with tuberculosis (3.4%), pneumonia communicable diseases and Class/Form of secondary students in Kisumu County. (2.9%), and other respiratory tract infections (1.8%)

a) Relationship between factors of variability and prevalence rates of communicable diseases among Secondary Schools

On further analysis using ANOVA, the following results, in Table 4.1, were obtained.

Table 4.1 : Relationship between factors of variability and prevalence rates of communicable diseases among Secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

Factors of variability	Statistical Indices		
	df	F	Significance at 95% confidence interval.
Locality of the school	1	0.154	0.695 (ns)
Type of the school	5	0.828	0.530 (ns)
Size of the school	3	1.229	0.299 (ns)
Gender of respondent	1	0.506	0.477 (ns)
Age of respondent	2	3.033	0.049 (ss)
Class/Form of respondent	3	0.515	0.672 (ns)

ns- there is not strong evidence that the variable has effect  
 ss- there is strong evidence that the variable has effect.

This study has revealed that age of students is a predisposing factor to infectious diseases (Table 4.1). The same results were observed by a study done by Baker et al., (2013) on infectious diseases attributable to household crowding in New Zealand.

e) *Public Health intervention programs in Secondary Schools in Kisumu County, Kenya*

Public health intervention programs were evaluated for optimal use in secondary schools. The intervention program was then analyzed against communicable disease prevalence rates and the discussion herein was based on the four important communicable diseases as was observed in this study. The following were the results:

i. *Malaria Infection in Secondary Schools*

Malaria infection is one of the most important communicable diseases among secondary schools in Kisumu County with a prevalence rate of 20.7% (20 700 per 100 000 students) (Figure 4.4).

a. *Insecticide Treated Mosquito Nets (ITNs) use.*

Prevalence of malaria was highest (11.09%) among students who did not sleep under insecticide treated nets (Fig. 4.11). It was also highest among students suffering from tuberculosis, pneumonia, and

other respiratory tract infections who did not sleep under insecticide treated nets.

There was significant ( $X^2_{4, 0.05}=1.613$ ) association between malaria prevalence rate and insecticide treated bed nets use among secondary students in Kisumu County. On further analysis using ANOVA, there was not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2). Prevalence of malaria varies widely from area to area as has been shown by several studies in Uganda (Nankabirwa et al., 2010, 2013; Pullan et al., 2010 & Kabatereine et al., 2011). The findings of these studies that in Uganda 14-64% of school- age children were parasitaemia at any one time concurs with the determined prevalence rate of malaria (20.7%) in this study (Figure 4.4). This also concurs with the results of a study on prevalence of malaria parasitaemia by Gitonga et al., (2010, 2012) in 480 Kenyan schools between September 2008 and March 2010 that found an overall prevalence rate of 4%, but this ranged from 0% to 71%. It also agrees with the findings of a study by Dia (2008), Ouldabdallahi (2011), Clarke (2012), Oduro (2013), and others for Senegal, The Gambia, and Mauritania that the prevalence of malaria infection in school-age children ranged from 5% to 50%.

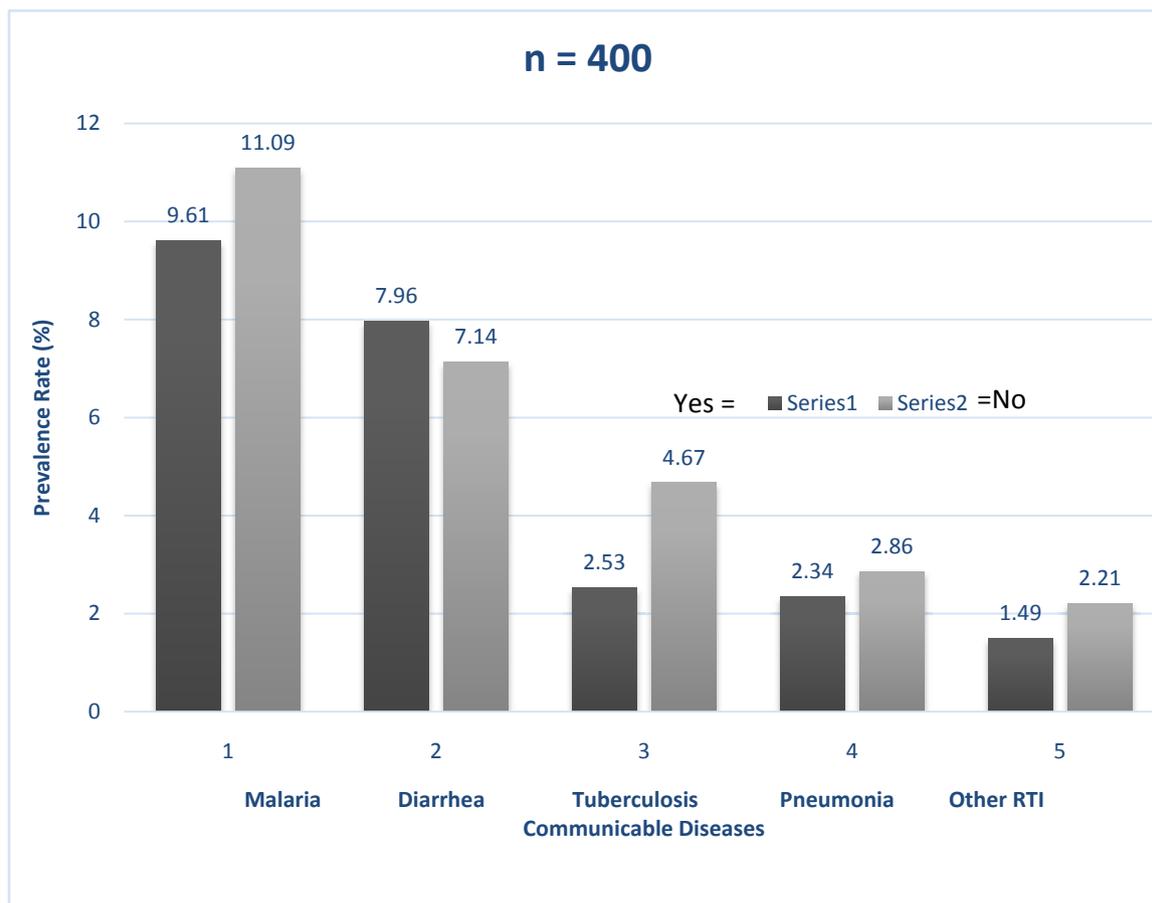


Figure 4.11 : Prevalence rates of communicable diseases against use of insecticide treated bed nets (ITNs) among secondary school students in Kisumu County, Kenya

It is therefore of great concern that malaria prevalence among secondary school students may interfere with their educational development. The effect of malaria infection on school absenteeism has been confirmed in several studies (Leighton & Foster, 1993; Some, 1994; Brooker et al., 2000) that it contributes to between 17% and 54% on school absenteeism per year.

Studies by Lengeler (2004), Lim and others (2011) have shown there is strong evidence that, at the individual level, regular use of an insecticide treated net (ITN) or long lasting insecticide treated nets (LLIN) substantially lowers the risk of malaria infection. The findings of this study (Figure 4.7) concur with the findings of Lengeler et al. This may be attributed to by the fact the fact that as children become older and more independent, parents have less control over the time when they go to bed, where they sleep, and whether they use a net, frequently resulting in low net coverage in children in this age group. This is confirmed (Figure 4.7) by a large proportion of respondents (11.5%) out of 46.3% of those who did not use insecticide treated nets, and reported confirmed incidences of malaria. The results also agree with the findings of a study by Noor and others (2009) that school –age students were least likely to sleep under an insecticide treated net (ITN).

Education targeted directly at the older children, for example through malaria education in schools, is likely to be the most effective way of increasing regular use of ITNs in this age group. Education and Health is one of the thematic clusters of Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) (UN, 2011). Global health agenda is shifting (Reich, 2009) from disease specific approaches to strengthening of health systems. One way of doing this is to advocate for establishment of health promoting schools.

*b. Prevalence rates of communicable diseases against Mosquito Breeding Control among Secondary Schools*

Prevalence rate of malaria was higher in schools where mosquito breeding control was not observed (Figure 4.12) and lower in schools where mosquito breeding control was observed to a high degree. The elimination of mosquito breeding sites in and around the home is important for vector control. There is considerable literature to support the hypothesis that males and females have different roles and responsibilities regarding vector control activities for dengue.

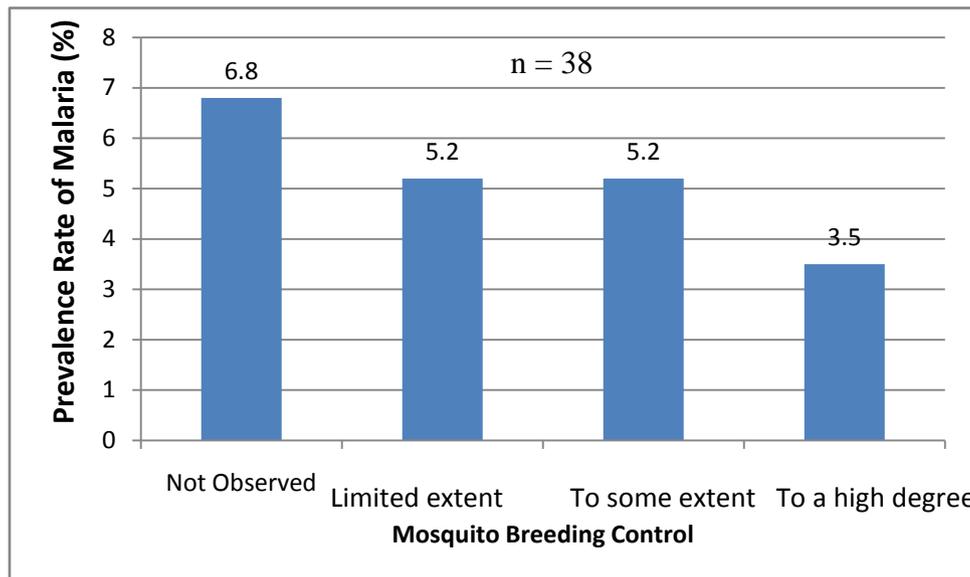


Figure 4.12 : Malaria prevalence rate against Mosquito Breeding Control among Secondary Schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

Although gender roles and responsibilities vary from culture to culture, women are usually responsible for the maintenance of the containers that hold the family drinking water and of the water vessels for doing laundry (both of which may be prime breeding sites for Aedes mosquitoes). However, the responsibility for maintenance of other potential vector breeding areas such as large water vessels stored outside the immediate living area, or disposed of or discarded solid wastes may be primarily taken by men in some cultures.

This study has shown that in schools where mosquito breeding control is not observed, the prevalence of malaria is high (Figure 4.12).

During focus group discussion, the consensus was that schools and communities where schools stand rarely work together to improve their health status. There is no significant ( $X^2_{3, 0.05}=3.154$ ) association between Mosquito Breeding Control intervention and prevalence rates of communicable diseases among secondary schools in Kisumu County. Also, there is not strong

evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2). Environmental components are linked to each other and significantly influence the health status of a school and students (Masike & Mojekwa, 2012).

This study found that there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2). These findings agree with the finding of a study by Fillinger & Lindsay (2011) that larval control may be effective in urban areas and a few other epidemiological situations in Africa, such as the Kenyan highlands, but it is generally not a cost effective approach to malaria control in rural areas of sub-Saharan Africa. Thus, there is likely to be little health benefit from encouraging school students to destroy potential breeding sites in school grounds, although this may help to reduce the number of “nuisance” mosquitoes

c. *Malaria prevalence rate against Solid Waste Disposal among secondary schools*

Malaria prevalence was 12.4% in 47.3% of schools that observed to a very limited extent solid waste disposal. In schools that observed solid waste disposal to a high degree, malaria prevalence was 2.1% and 6.2% in schools where solid waste disposal was observed to some extent (Figure 4.13). Plate 4.1 is a photograph showing state of solid and liquid waste disposal in schools.

During health survey of the schools, 65.8% (25 out of 38) of schools had limited storage spaces, and most of the waste was biodegradable. Most schools (84.2%) (32 out of 38) used open dumping as a method of waste disposal, and unattended.

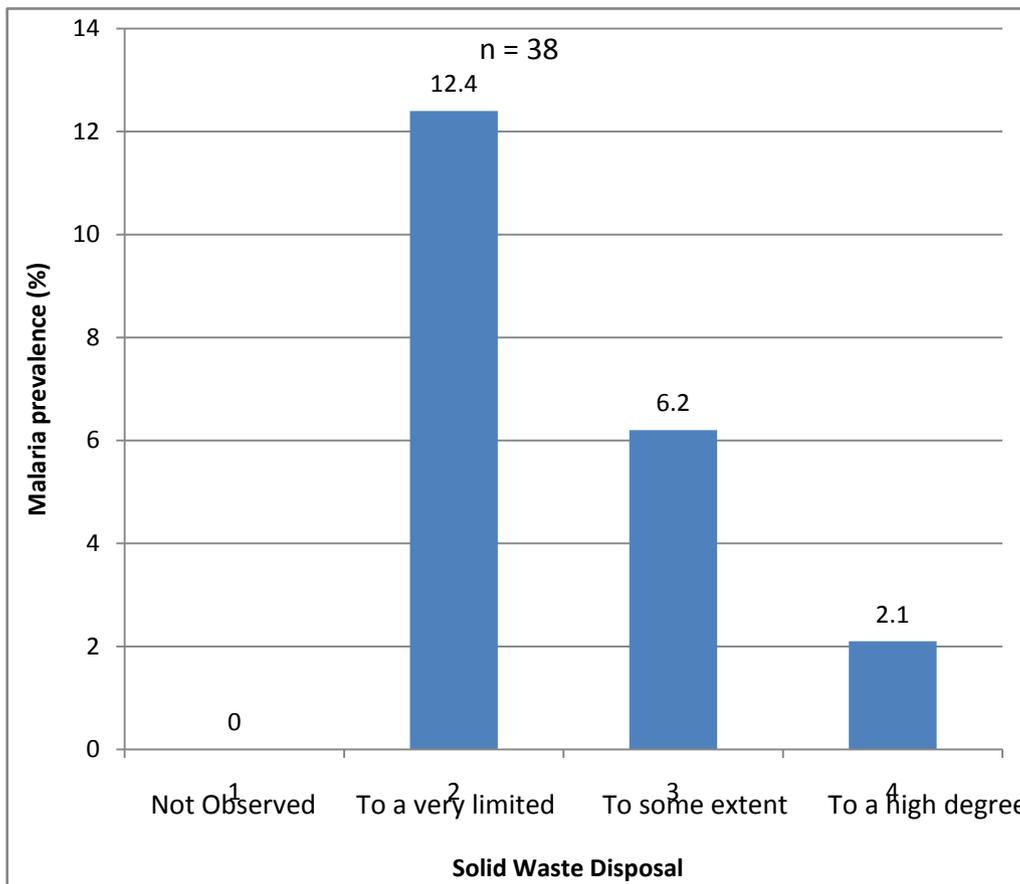


Figure 4.13 : Malaria prevalence rate against Solid Waste Disposal among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

The Pearson chi square showed there in no significant association ( $X^2_{2, 0.05}=9.692$ ) between Solid Waste Disposal intervention and prevalence rates of communicable diseases among secondary schools in Kisumu County; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).



*Plate 4.1:* A photograph showing state of solid and liquid wastes among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

The influence of social and ecological contexts on disease transmission has been recognized for disease spread through direct contact, for example, sexually transmitted diseases and airborne diseases; diseases with environmental reservoirs. Transmission models can serve as conceptual or analytical instruments to analyze the infections between environmental contexts and transmission cycle components.

During the health survey of the schools, 65.8% were found to have limited disposal places for solid wastes, and 84.2% had open dumping sites which were also unattended. The results of this study concur with the findings of a study done by Aninash Puri et al., (2008) that a large number of residents, up to 90-95%, were found suffering from fever. This is indicative of a strong, to moderate health impact on the resident population due to the solid waste being dumped in the vicinity. Open dumping cause health hazards as well as fly nuisance.

There are various problems that could be related to handling and storage of solid wastes, and if unattended create small nuisance. Stray animals like pigs, dogs and cows further aggravate the problem of spreading and littering of solid waste as they are seen at the sites. Solid wastes is a major part of environmental pollution, it is responsible for spreading many harmful and infectious diseases. An unattended waste is normally wet and decomposes and leads to epidemics. It also affect water bodies and causes water-borne diseases to the surrounding communities.

ii. *Diarrhea Infection in Secondary Schools*

Diarrhea is the second most important communicable disease among students in secondary schools with a prevalence rate of 15.1% (15 100 per 100

000 students) (Figure. 4.4). Some of the findings causing the high prevalence rates are discussed below:

a. *Diarrhea prevalence rates against Safe Water Provision*

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 9.8% in schools where safe water provision was not observed; 4.6% in schools where provision of safe water was observed to a very limited extent and 0.7% in schools where safe water provision was observed to some extent. However, prevalence was 0.0% in schools where safe water provision was observed to a high degree (Fig. 4.14). The Pearson chi square showed a significant association ( $\chi^2_{2, 0.05} = 16.769$ ) between provisions of safe water as an intervention and prevalence of diarrhea among secondary schools in Kisumu County. Plate 4.5 illustrates the state of safe water provision in some schools in Kisumu County.

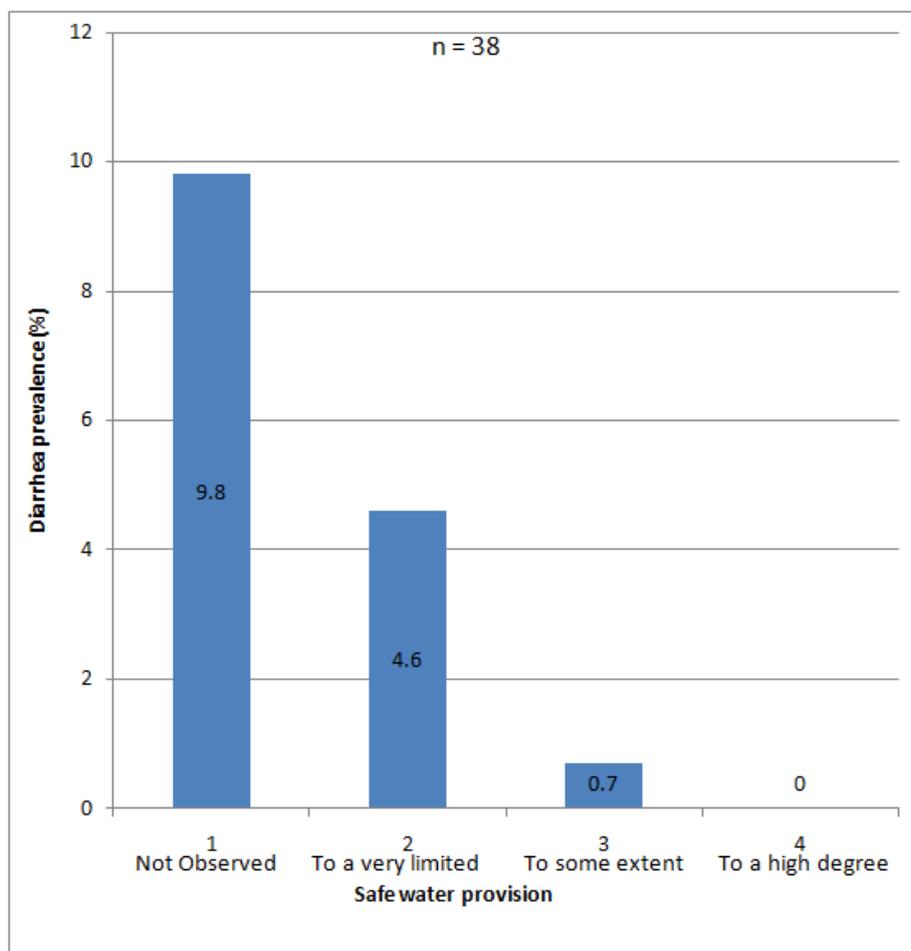


Figure 4.14 : Diarrhea prevalence rate against Safe Water provision among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

Plate 4.2 shows a photograph of a section of a school kitchen where water is stored in containers without taps and jugs used to scoop it.



Plate 4.2 : A photograph showing state of Safe Water provision in secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

Contaminated water causes diarrhea. Food is the main source of pathogens causing diarrhea. Safe water provision is important to control of diarrhea. In the absence of safe water provision, food handling becomes a risk factor to spread of diarrhea. This study has revealed that in schools where safe water provision was not observed, prevalence of diarrhea was high (Fig. 4.14). Studies by Muna (2010) and Einsenberg et al., (2007) had similar findings. Boschi-Pinto et al., (2008) in their study also observed that the major contributing factor to burden of communicable diseases is

inadequate access to safe water and sanitation infrastructure.

b. *Diarrhea prevalence rate against Hand Washing before eating among secondary students*

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 10.3% in schools where hand washing before eating was not observed; 4.6% in schools where the intervention was observed to a very limited extent and 0.4% in schools where hand washing before eating was observed to some extent. However, the prevalence was 0.0% in schools where hand washing before eating was observed to a high degree (Figure 4.15).

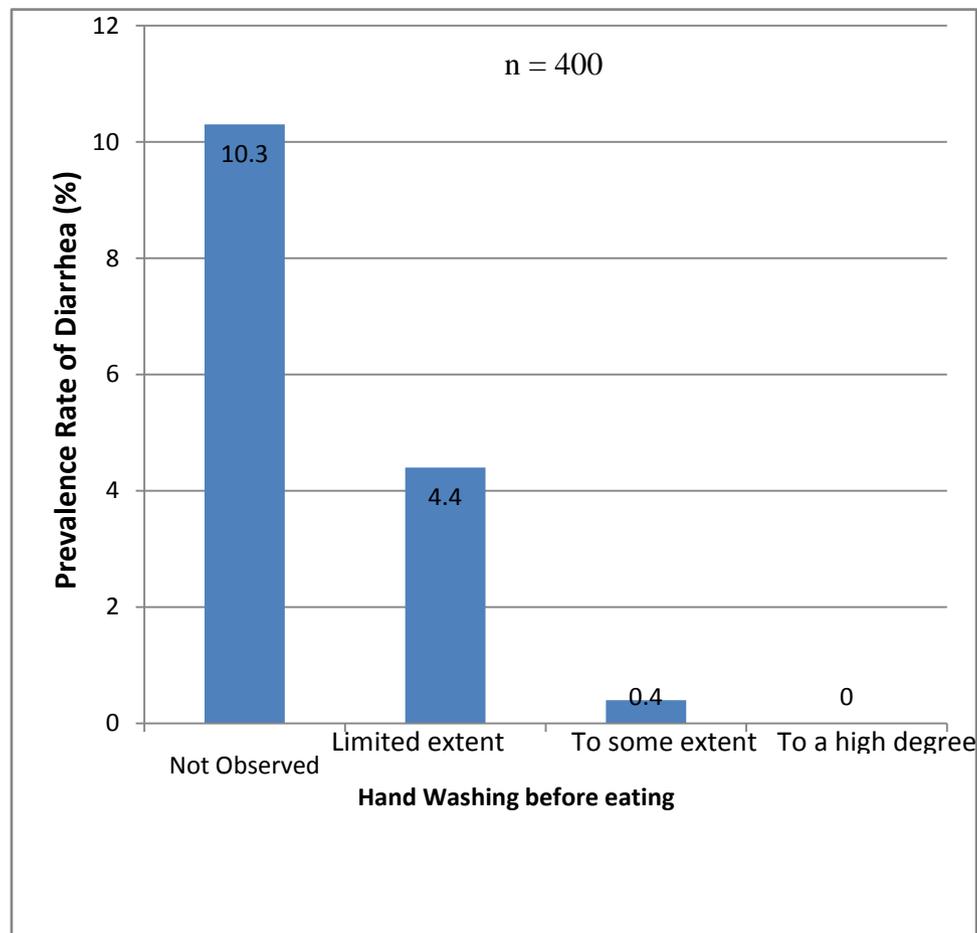


Figure 4.15 : Prevalence of Diarrhea against Hand Washing before eating among secondary students in Kisumu County, Kenya

Of the 84.7% schools that observed handwashing before eating, 5.3%, 2.6% and 7.9% had confirmed incidences of diarrhea, tuberculosis and pneumonia respectively. There were no confirmed incidences of diarrhea, tuberculosis and pneumonia for 10.5% of schools that observed hand washing to some extent before eating.

There was a significant ( $X^2_{2, 0.05}=44.42$ ) association between prevalence of diarrhea and Hand Washing before eating intervention among secondary school students in Kisumu County; there was not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

c. *Diarrhea prevalence rates against provision of Water only at Hand washing place among secondary schools*

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 11.3% in schools where water only at hand washing area was not observed; 3.1% in schools where the intervention was observed to a very limited extent; 0.7% in schools where water only at hand washing area was observed to some extent and 0.0% where the intervention was observed to a high degree (Figure 4.16).

There was a significant ( $X^2_{2, 0.05}=44.42$ ) association between provision of water only at handwashing area and prevalence of diarrhea among

secondary schools in Kisumu County; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

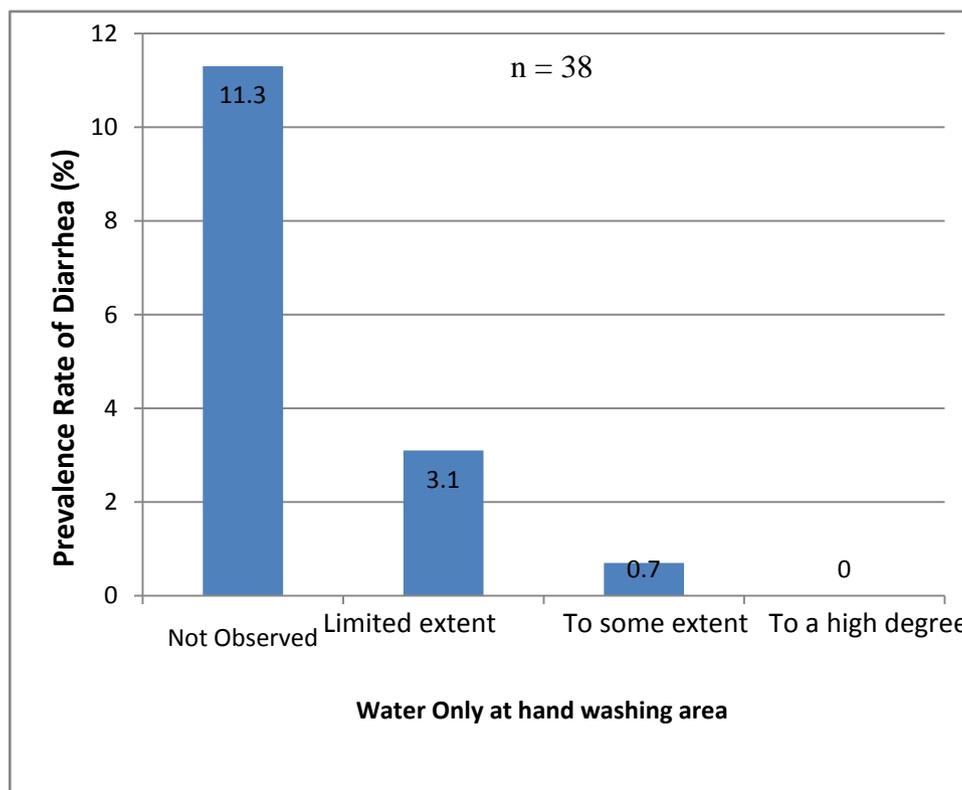


Figure 4.16 : Diarrhea prevalence rates against provision of Water only at hand washing area among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

d. Prevalence rates against provision of water and soap at handwashing area among secondary schools

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 12.3% in schools where water and soap at hand washing area was not observed; 2.5% in schools where the intervention was observed to a very limited extent; 0.3% in schools where intervention was observed too some extent, and 0% in schools where the intervention was observed to a high degree (Figure 4.17).

The Pearson chi square ( $X^2_{2, 0.05}=10.158$ ) showed there was a significant association between provision of soap and water at handwashing area , and prevalence of diarrhea among secondary schools in Kisumu County; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

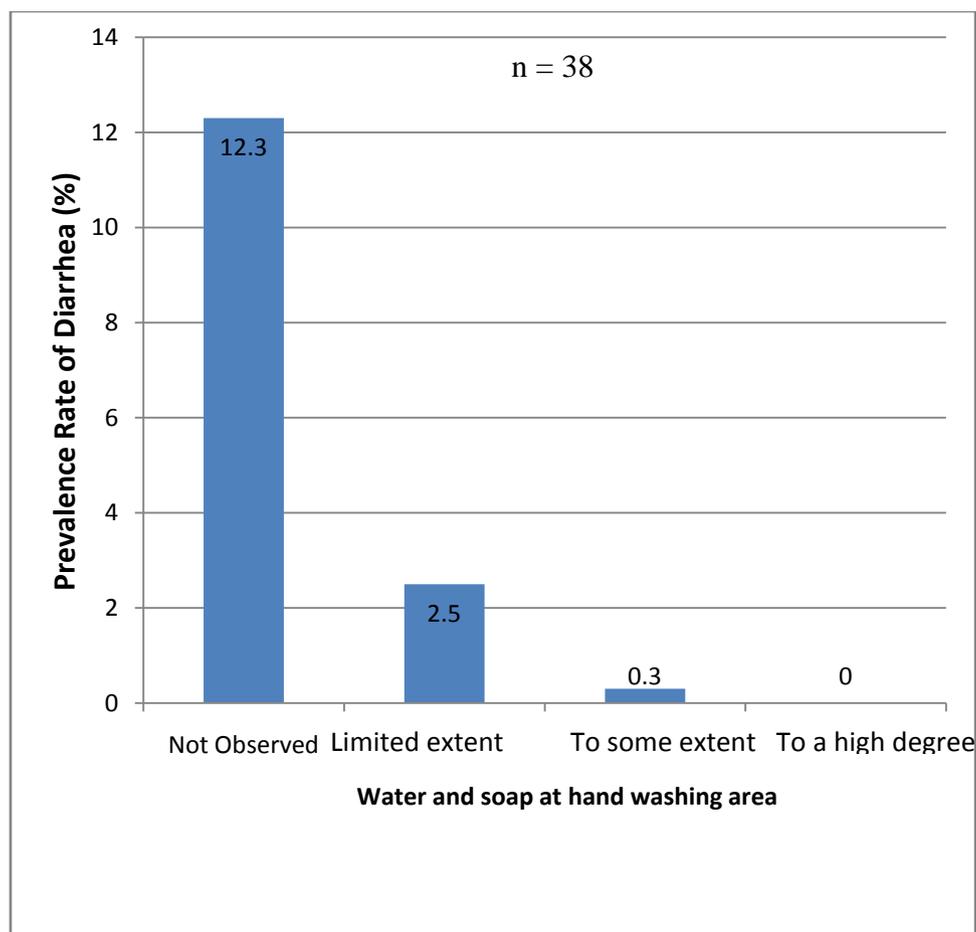


Figure 4.17 : Diarrhea prevalence rate against provision of Water and soap at hand washing area among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

e. *Prevalence rates against provision of Water, Soap and Disposable towel at Handwashing area among secondary schools*

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 12.4% in schools where water, soap and disposable towel at hand washing area was not observed, 2.4% in schools where water, soap and disposable towels was observed to a very limited, and 0.3% in schools where the intervention was observed to some extent. However, there were no schools where water, soap and disposaltowel at hand washing area was observed to a high degree (Figure 4.18).

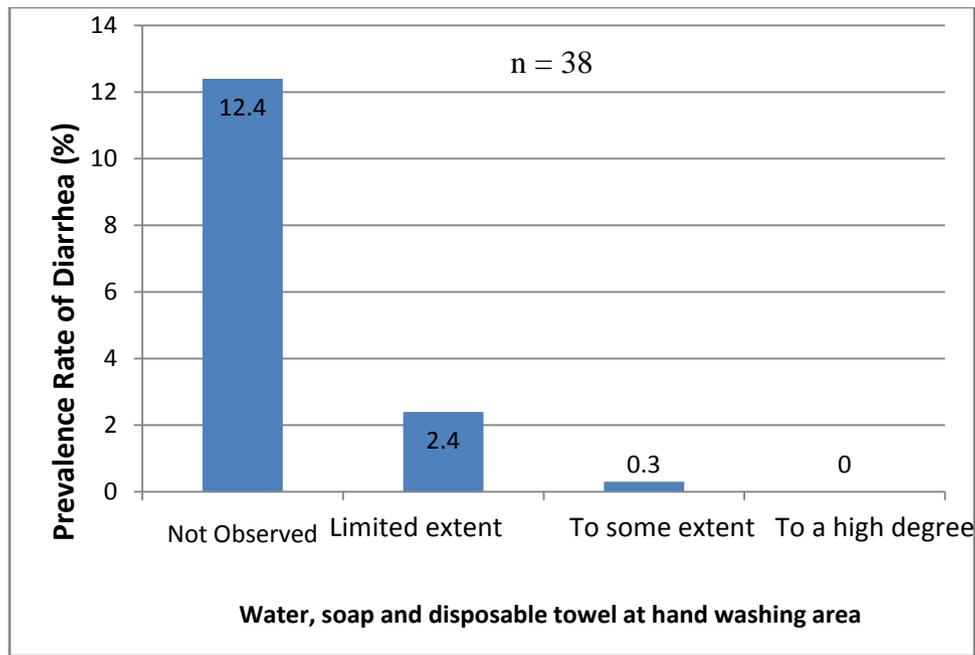


Figure 4.18 : Diarrhea prevalence rates against provision of Water, Soap and disposable Towel at Handwashing area among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

There was not a significant ( $X^2_{2, 0.05}=10.158$ ) association between provision of Water, Soap and disposable Towel at Hand washing area intervention and prevalence rates of diarrhea among secondary schools in Kisumu County; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

During Focus Group Discussions (FGD), one of the thematic issues that generated a lot of interest among the participants was the contribution of hand washing practices to prevalence rates of most communicable diseases. "Hand sanitizers are good, but we cannot discount the fact that soap and water is still the best way to get rid of germs," said area health officer, Dr. Mathews (not his real name). Debbie Hellen (not real name), an infection prevention expert at Nyabondo Mission Hospital, said sanitizers have 60 percent alcohol for them to be effective. "The alcohol kills bacteria on contact." When using soap and water, we are rubbing our hands together and then you wash them off and you wash the germs and bacteria into the sink."

Hellen said sanitizers have made it easier to practice protecting ourselves from germs. "They are so much convenient, and they have proven to be effective," she said. Maurice Baya (not real name), a public health nurse in Mombasa and a member of management committee in one of the schools said he does not advocate for the use of fragrant sanitizers. "I want the real stuff, the ones you can smell the alcohol in," he said. Assistant Area Chief in one of the schools said it seems more food kiosk owners than ever are not conscious of good hygiene. "I haven't seen a food kiosk

or grocery in this area where some kind of hand sanitizer is placed in an area of reach for use," he said.

Dr. Hellen said, "Hand washing technique is what is so important." Health officials agree, the technology and the convenience of the hand sanitizer does not replace tried-and-true hand washing. Hand sanitizer is good for an extra level of precaution.

Case studies on sustainable development (Corvalan et al., 1999) or ecosystem approaches (Corvalan et al., 2005) bridge scientists, policy makers, activists, and citizens. This agrees with the results of the focus group discussion of this study given that it was a group of professionals and other stakeholders in Education sector. It was by consensus that hand washing continues to be one of the most important steps we can take to avoid spreading germs and infections to others, both in our personal and professional lives. Ensuring that there is regular hand washing education and on-site supplies are easily accessible and adequately stocked is essential for retention and infection control in any school. Like was said by a member of District Education Quality Assurance and Standards Committee, hand washing needs to become something that people think of on a consistent basis throughout the day. Simply being aware of the risks associated with poor hygiene can help make a difference in a person or business attention to hand washing, and health and wellness overall.

f. Diarrhea prevalence rates against Handwashing after defecation among secondary students

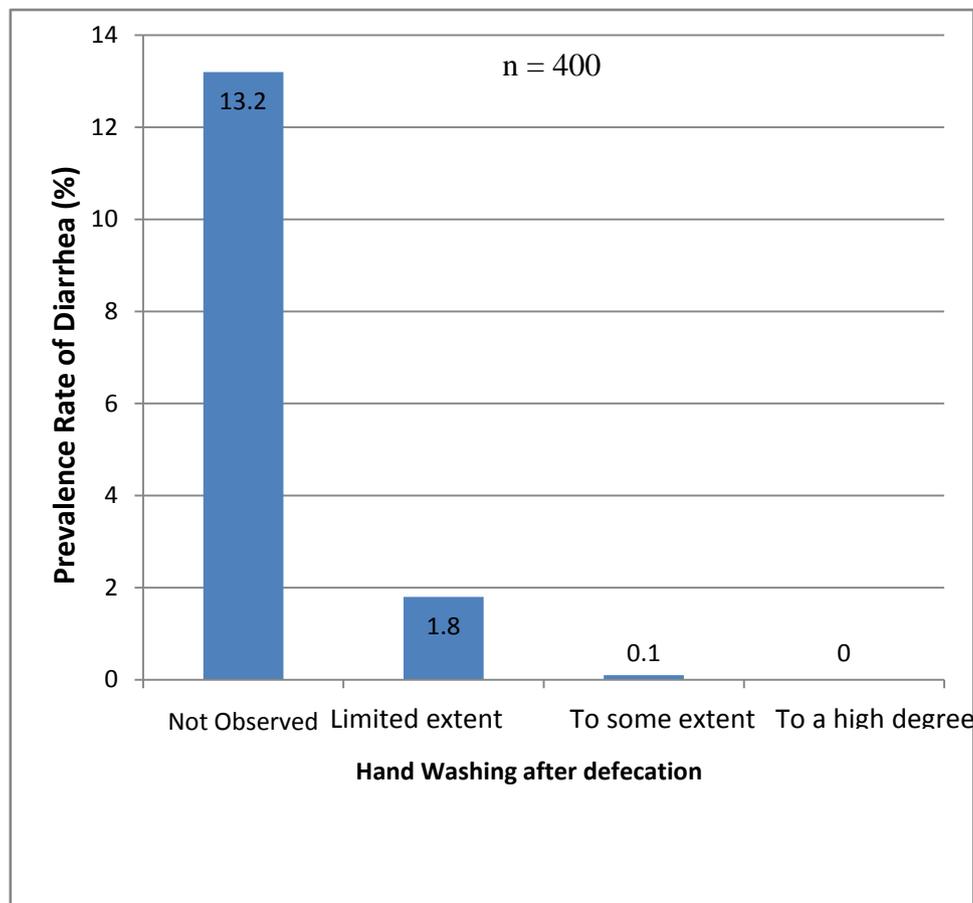


Figure 4.19 : Diarrhea prevalence rates against Handwashing after Defecation among secondary students in Kisumu County, Kenya

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 13.2% in schools where hand washing after defecation was not observed; 1.8% in schools where the intervention was observed to a very limited extent; 0.1% in schools where the intervention was observed to some extent, and 0% in schools where hand washing after defecation was observed to a high degree (Figure 4.19).

The Pearson chi square ( $X^2_{2, 0.05}=16.158$ ) showed a significant association between Hand washing after Defecation intervention and prevalence of diarrhea among secondary school students in Kisumu County; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

The most common route of transmission of diarrheal agents is the fecal-oral route, within and between populations (Keusch et al., 2006). This finding concurs with the results of this study (Figure 4.19) revealing that prevalence rate of diarrhea among students is high in schools where hand washing after defecation was not observed. Hand washing after having passed stools is particularly important as a measure at individual level to reduce spread of pathogens (Clasen et al., 2006). Safe water, good

sanitation, waste management and food safety are vital community interventions to prevent diarrhea.

g. Diarrhea prevalence rates against Kitchen Staff Hygiene among secondary schools

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 10.7% in schools where Kitchen Staff Hygiene was not observed; 4.2% in schools where the intervention was observed to a very limited extent; 0.1% in both schools where the intervention was observed to some extent and also to a high degree (Figure 4.20).

There is a significant ( $X^2_{2, 0.05}=16.158$ ) association between Kitchen Staff Hygiene and prevalence rate of diarrhea among secondary schools in Kisumu County; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

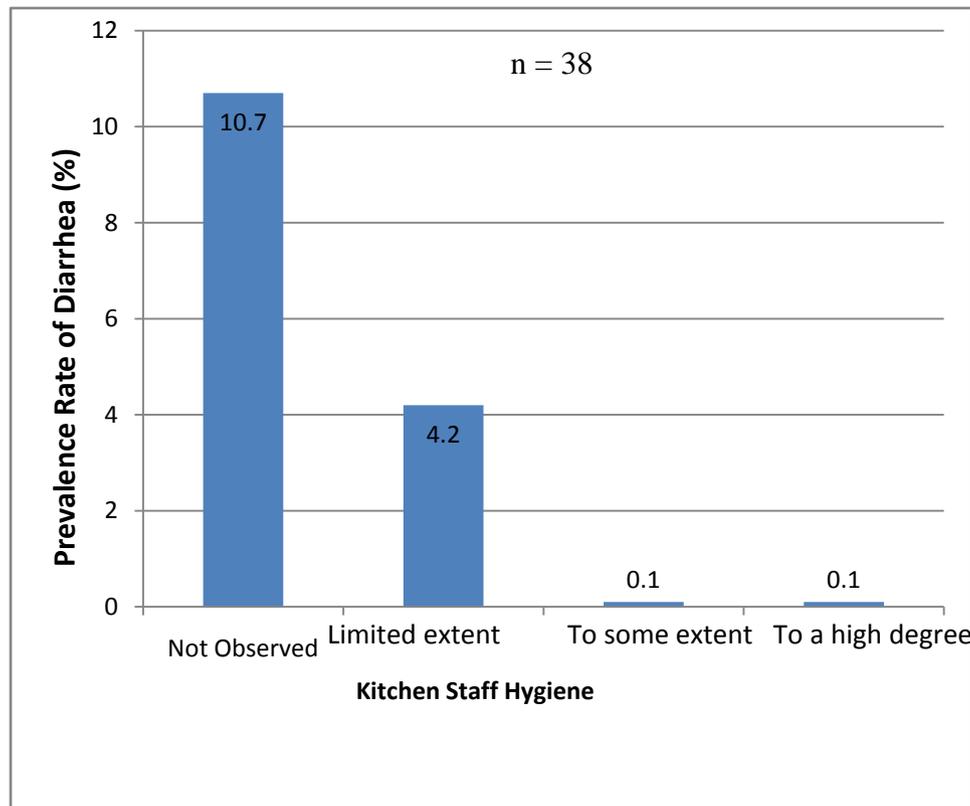


Figure 4.20 : Diarrhea prevalence rates against Kitchen Staff Hygiene among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

Health inspection in schools is an important component of school health service. Studies have shown that the health inspection in schools is necessary to ensure that children derive optimum benefit from investments in education and health programs, and that they remain physically, mentally and socially healthy. WASH in schools' programming focuses on improvement of water and sanitation access; point-of-use water treatment technologies; and behavior change and hygiene promotion (Pamela, 2010).

WASH in schools has boosted school attendance and achievement, and has promoted personal hygiene and environmental sanitation in schools and communities and at the same time reduced the burden of diarrheal diseases. Keeping hands clean has reduced communicable diseases burden (Anne, 2011; CDC, 2013). Shigellosis infection is by fecal-oral route. The importance of hand washing with soap, and strict hygiene for food preparation particularly after activities such as bowel movements cannot be overemphasized (Anne, 2011). Results of this study reveal the prevalence of diarrhea is high among students in schools where Kitchen Staff hygiene was not observed (Figure 4.20).

where the intervention was observed to a limited extent; 3.9% where the intervention was observed to some extent; and 3.8% where the intervention was observed to a high degree (Figure 4.21). There was a significant ( $X^2_{2, 0.05} = 39.84$ ) association between Student - Toilet Ratio and prevalence rate of diarrhea among secondary schools in Kisumu County; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2). Prevalence of intestinal parasite infections may be attributed to poor environmental conditions and personal hygiene, and inadequate supply of safe water and waste disposal (Fatma & Ibrahim, 2011). These findings concur with the results of this study showing that prevalence of diarrhea is high in schools where student-toilet ratio was not observed (Figure 4.21).

*h. Diarrhea prevalence rates against Student - Toilet Ratio among secondary schools*

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 4.0% in schools where Student- Toilet Ration was not observed; 3.4%

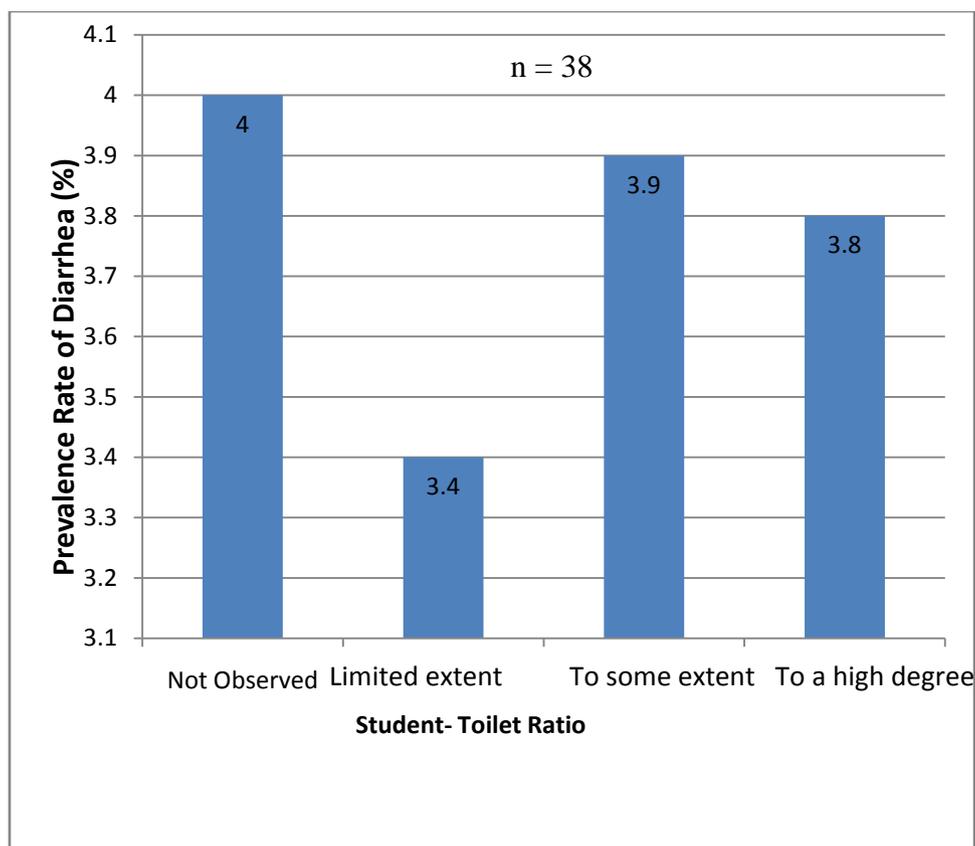


Figure 4.21 : Diarrhea prevalence rates against Student-Toilet ratio among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

i. Diarrhea prevalence rate against Condition of Eating Area among secondary schools

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 3.9% in schools where Condition of Eating Area was not observed; 3.5% where the intervention was observed to a very limited extent; 4.1% where the intervention was observed to some extent; and 3.6% where the intervention was observed to a high degree (Figure 4.22); prevalence also high in schools where liquid waste disposal was not observed (Figure 4.23) and illustrated in Plates 4.3 and 4.4.

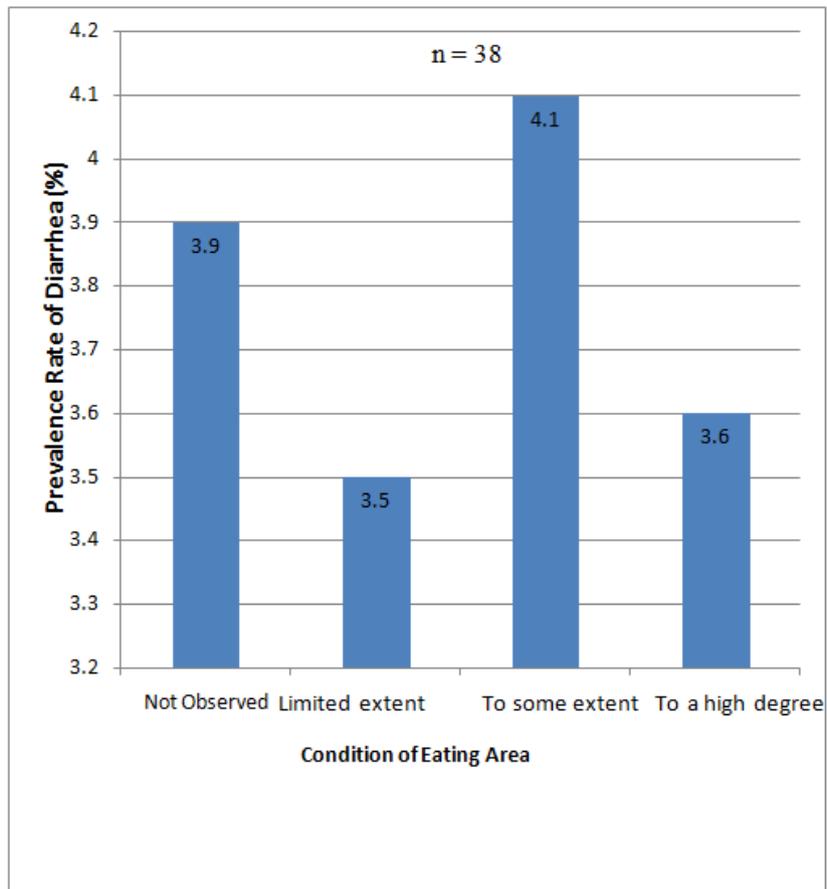


Figure 4.22 : Diarrhea prevalence rates against Condition of Eating Area among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

There was a significant association ( $\chi^2_{3, 0.05} = 34.000$ ) between condition of eating area (floor/walls) and prevalence of diarrhea among secondary schools in Kisumu County ( $p < 0.05$ ); there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).



Plate 4.3 : A photograph showing a smoky kitchen area among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya



*Plate 4.4* : A photograph showing cooked foods kept uncovered in a school kitchen among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

Many diarrheal agents thrive in organic matter and can therefore multiply rapidly in cooking areas with poor floors and walls and therefore in food kept in such places (Scholthof, 2007). Figure 4.22 reveal that most schools did not observe conditions of eating areas to the highest degree; the net effect was that more students had incidences of diarrhea in these conditions that in schools where condition of eating area was observed to the highest degree. Control of hygiene in public eating places is a well-established public health function to prevent the occurrence and spread of pathogens like salmonella and Escherichia Coli. Keeping school environment clean by ensuring proper maintenance of eating areas ensures frequency of exposure from diarrheal agents is minimized.

*j. Diarrhea prevalence rate against Liquid Waste Disposal among secondary schools in Kisumu County*

Prevalence rate of diarrhea was 10.3% in schools where Liquid Waste disposal was not observed; 3.1% where the intervention was observed to a very limited extent; 1.7% where the intervention was observed to some extent; and 0.0% where the intervention was observed to a high degree (Figure 4.23).

There was a significant ( $X^2_{2, 0.05}=11.692$ ) association between Liquid Waste Disposal intervention and prevalence of diarrhea among secondary schools in Kisumu County; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

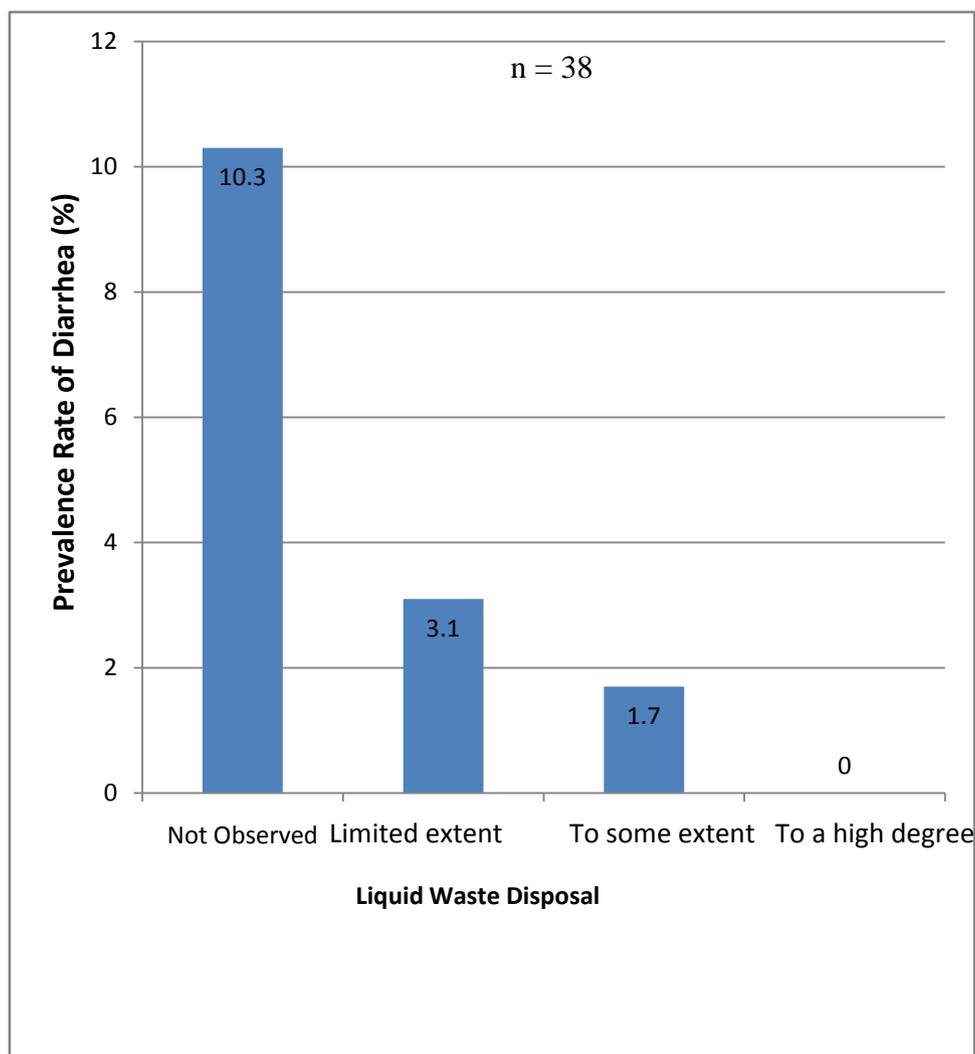


Figure 4.23 : Diarrhea prevalence rates against Liquid Waste Disposal among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

k. Tuberculosis and Pneumonia Infection in Secondary Schools

Tuberculosis and Pneumonia are the third and fourth most important communicable diseases among secondary students with prevalence rates of 7.2% (7200 per 100 000 students) and 5.2% (5200 per 100 000 students) respectively (Figure 4.4), and these results are discussed at the end of section 4.6.3.

l. Tuberculosis and Pneumonia prevalence Rates against Ventilation in Hostels among secondary schools

Prevalence rate of Tuberculosis and Pneumonia were 7.2% and 5.2% in schools where ventilation in hostels was observed to some extent, and 0% for other observations (Figure 4.24).

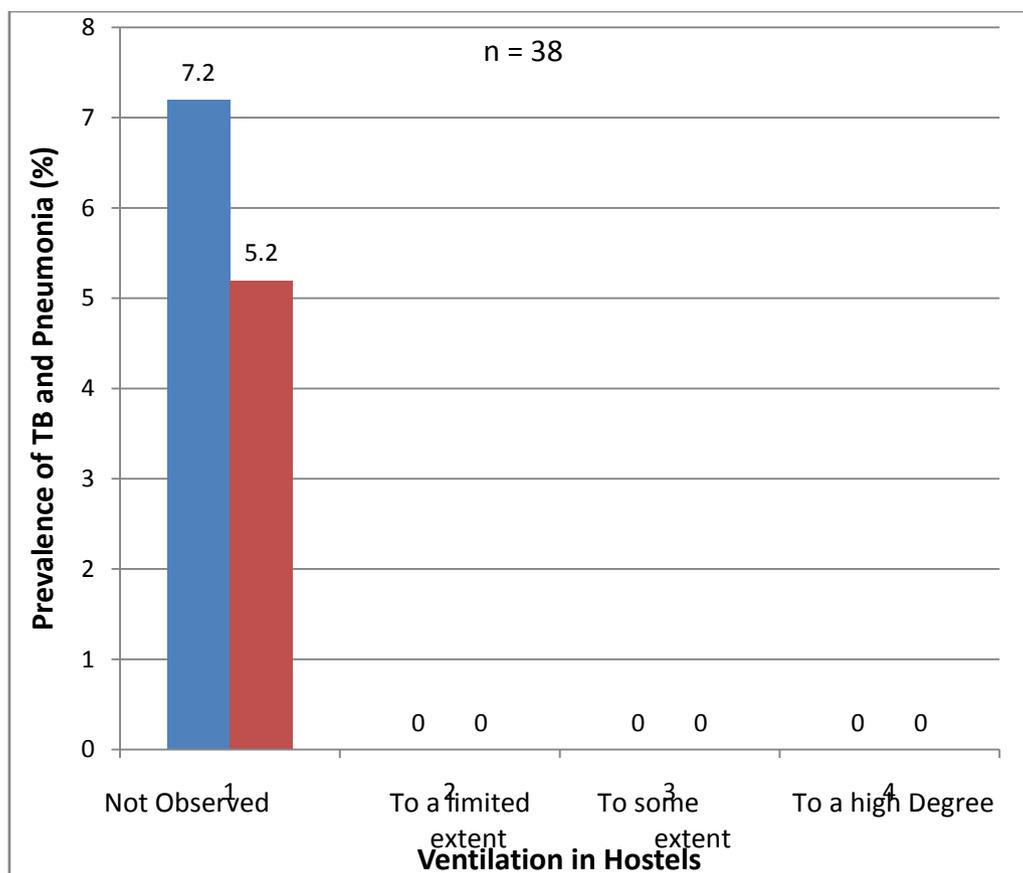


Figure 4.24 Tuberculosis and Pneumonia prevalence rates against Ventilation in Hostels among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

There was a significant ( $X^2_{6, 0.05} = 11.385$ ) association between tuberculosis and pneumonia prevalence rates and ventilation in hostels of hostels among secondary schools in Kisumu County.

*m. Tuberculosis and Pneumonia prevalence rates against Bed Spacing in Hostels and Desk Spacing in Classrooms among secondary schools in Kisumu County*

Prevalence rate of Tuberculosis and Pneumonia were 7.2% and 5.2% in schools where bed spacing in hostels was not observed and 0% for other observations (Figure 4.25 (a)).

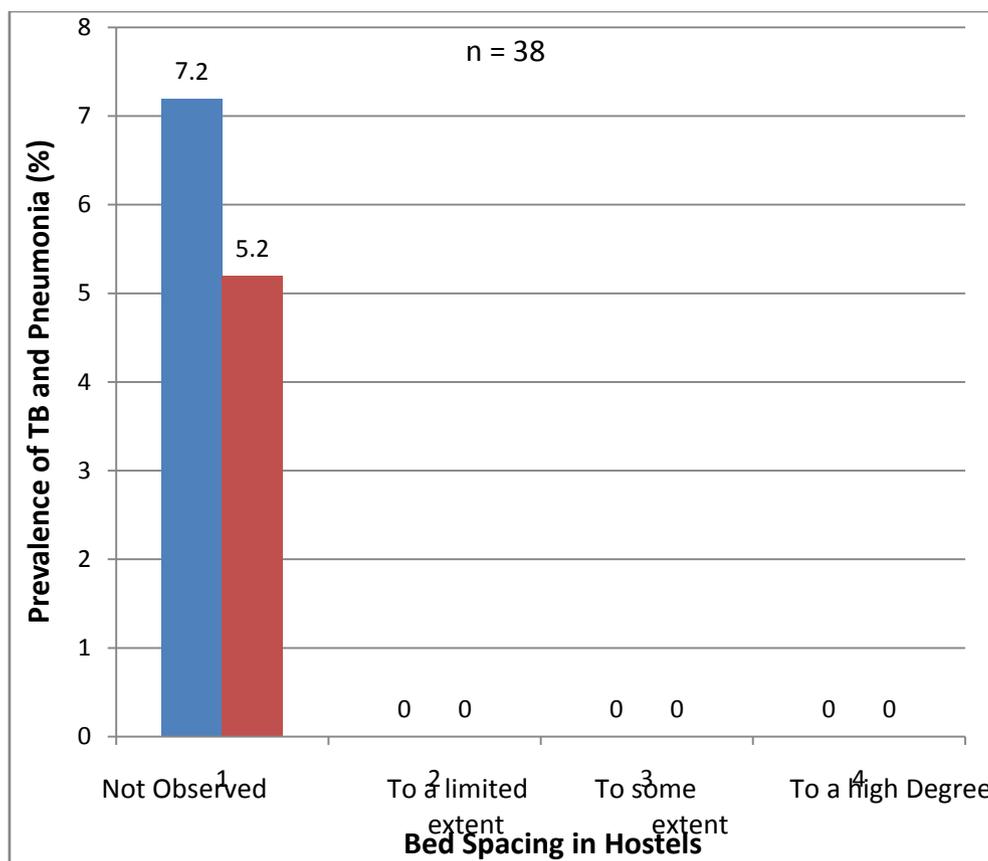


Figure 4.25 (a) : TB and Pneumonia prevalence rates against Bed Spacing in Hostels among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

There was a significant ( $X^2_{6, 0.05}=8.21$ ) association between bed spacing and prevalence rates of tuberculosis and pneumonia among secondary schools; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

Prevalence rate of Tuberculosis and Pneumonia were 4.8% and 5.0% respectively in schools where desk spacing in classrooms was not observed; 2.4% and 0.2% respectively in schools where desk spacing was observed to a very limited extent, and 0% for other observations (Figure 4.25 (b)). There was a significant ( $X^2_{6, 0.05}=8.21$ ) association between desk spacing and prevalence rates of tuberculosis and pneumonia among secondary schools; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

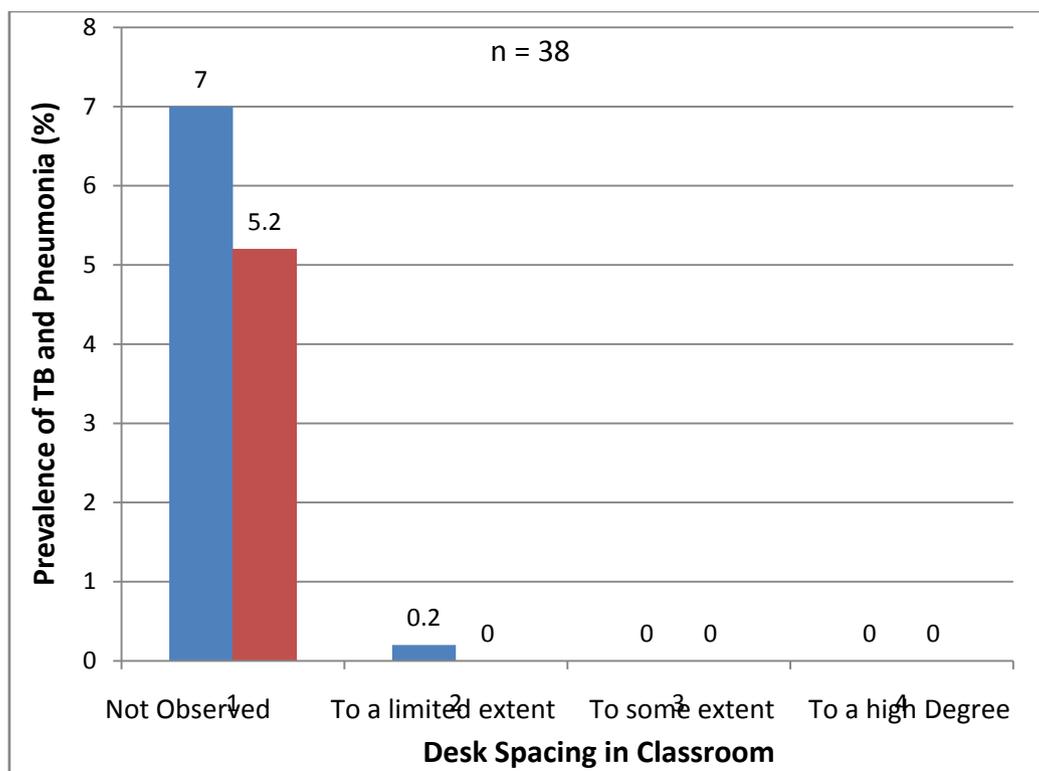


Figure 4.25(b) : TB and Pneumonia prevalence rates against Desk Spacing in classrooms among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

Transmission of infections in students can easily occur due to large concentration of students in a school (CDC, 2007). This is supported by the findings in Figure 4.24; Figure 4.25 (a) and Figure 4.25 (b).

*n. Tuberculosis and Pneumonia prevalence rates against Ventilation in Classrooms among secondary schools*

Prevalence rate of Tuberculosis and Pneumonia were 5.3% and 5.1% respectively in schools where desk spacing in classrooms was not observed; 1.9% and 0.1% respectively in schools where desk spacing was observed to a very limited extent, and 0% for other observations (Figure 4.26).

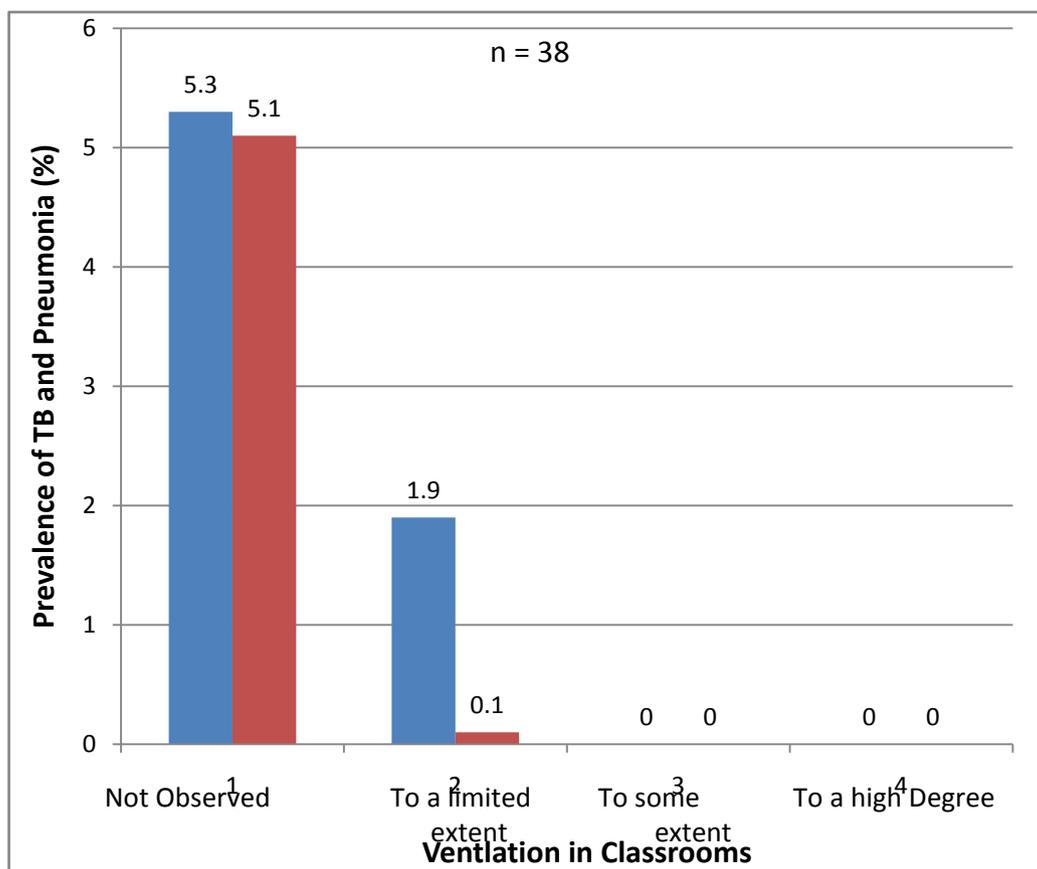


Figure 4.26 : Prevalence rates of Tuberculosis and Pneumonia against Ventilation in Classrooms among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

There was a significant ( $X^2_{6, 0.05} = 11.309$ ) association between ventilation in classrooms and prevalence of tuberculosis and pneumonia among secondary schools; there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

*o. Tuberculosis and Pneumonia prevalence rates against Condition of Classroom among secondary schools*

Prevalence rate of Tuberculosis and Pneumonia were 7.0% and 5.2% respectively in schools where condition of classroom was not observed; 0.2% and 0% respectively in schools where desk spacing was observed to a very limited extent, and 0% for other observations (Figure 4.27).

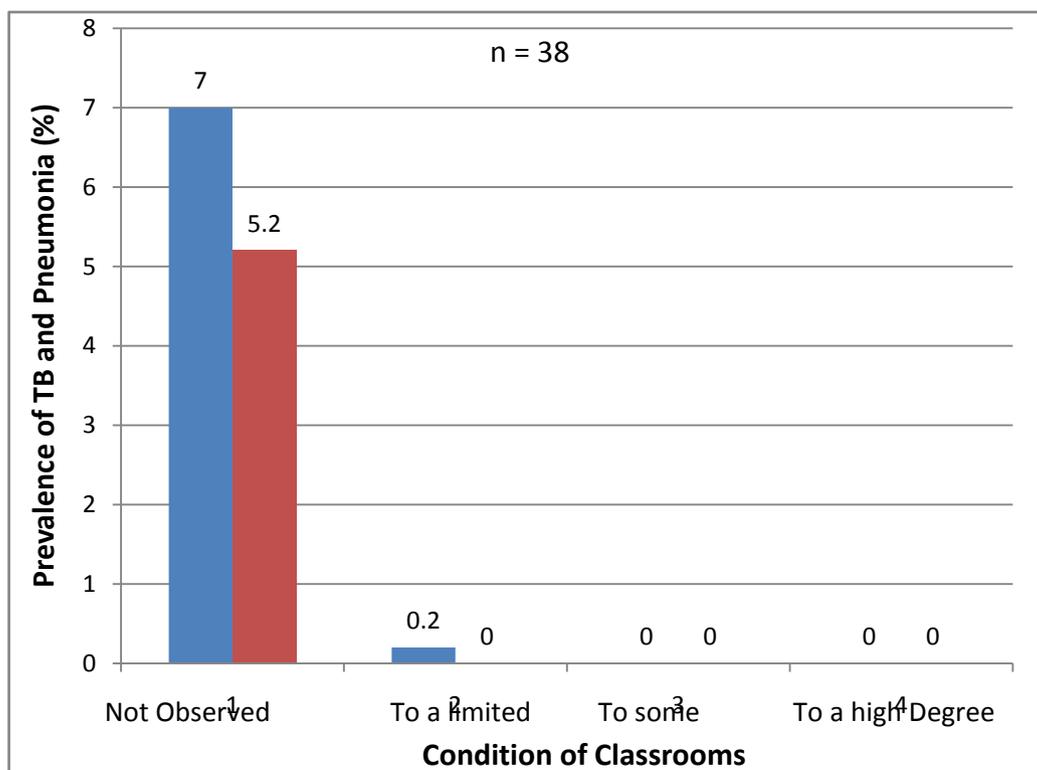


Figure 4.27 : TB and Pneumonia Prevalence rates against condition of classroom among secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya

The findings of this study agree with the findings of Baker et al., (2013) which revealed that children less than five years old exposed to greater household crowding had 1.69 times the odds of pneumonia than children exposed to the least crowding. It has been documented that children play an important role in the epidemiology of diseases.

*p. Health Seeking Behavior among secondary Students in Kisumu County, Kenya*

Health seeking behavior among students is one important health indicator in a school. The findings are discussed in terms of places where treatment was sought, whether recovered or not recovered, and availability of health clinics in the school compound.

*q. Place of treatment among secondary students in Kisumu County*

A large proportion (77.5%, 310 out of 400) of respondents confirmed sickness in the last two weeks from the time of data collection.

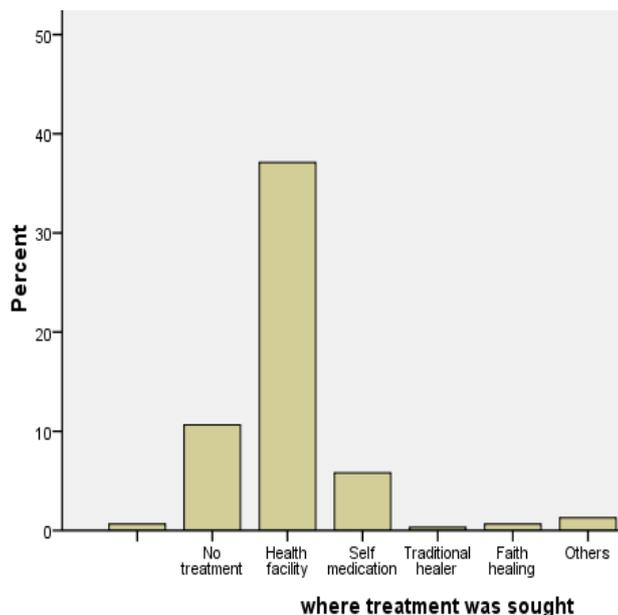


Figure 4.28 : Proportion of secondary Students in Kisumu County against place where treatment was sought

Thirty eight percent (38.0%) sought treatment in health facilities when ill. However, 9% did not seek treatment, 5.2% had self-medication, 0.5% sought treatment from traditional healers, 0.8% went to faith healers and 2.5% had other treatment procedures not specified (Figure 4.28).

r. Recovery Status among secondary students in Kisumu County

Out of the 310 respondents who were sick, 147(47.4%) sought treatment. Seventy eight (78) out of 310 (25.2%) sought treatment and recovered while 59 out 310 (19.0%) sought treatment and did not recover but were still on treatment.

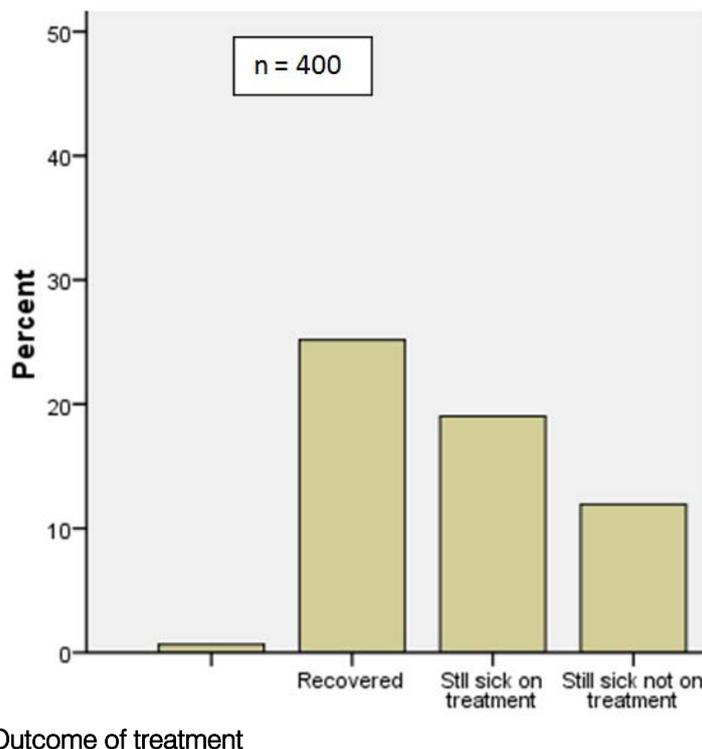


Figure 4.29 : Proportion of secondary Students in Kisumu County against Outcome of treatment

Thirty seven (37) out of 310 (11.9%) of those who were ill and did not seek treatment were still sick (Figure 4.29). There was a significant ( $X^2_{4,0.05}=184.374$ ) association between communicable disease prevalence rates and health seeking behavior in schools; there is strong evidence that the intervention has effect (Table 4.2).

s. *Health Unit status among secondary schools in Kisumu County*

Only 4 out of 38 (10.5%) schools had health units with trained nurses, compared to 31 out of 38 (81.6%) schools that had no health units.

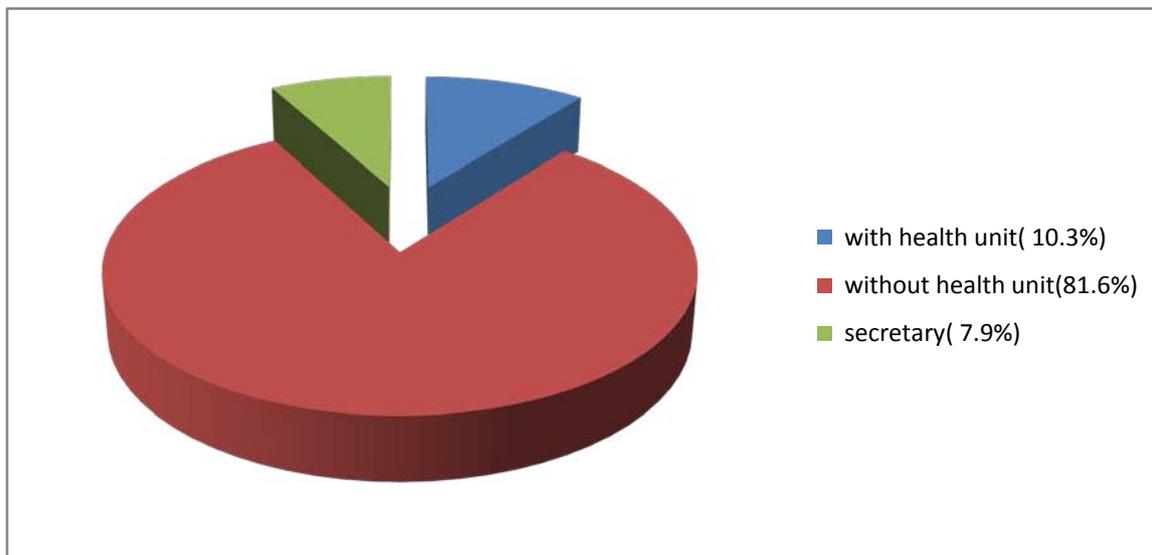


Figure 4.30 : Proportion of Secondary schools with Health Units in Schools

Schools without health units engaged school matrons or school secretaries to dispense drugs to students (Figure 4.30).

There are important gender differences (Figure 4.8) related to health seeking behavior and access to health care. In some societies there are differences in the utilization of health care facilities and in the level and type of care given to males and females, for example, Pandey *et al.* (2002) in their follow up observational study in Kolkata, India, found that boys with diarrhea were more likely to be given oral rehydration fluids than girls, and were more likely to be taken to qualified health professionals for treatment. A similar result (Mitra, Rahman & Fuchs, 2000) was found in Bangladesh where the time between the onset of symptoms of diarrhea and hospital admission was significantly higher in girls than for boys. Having health clinics with qualified staff in schools may improve health seeking behavior which is an intervention pillar in reversing trends of communicable disease burden in schools (Table 4.2).

Health care system is an environmental factor of relevance to the occurrence of diarrhea (Mills *et al.*, 2006). A functional school health system is key in prevention of diarrhea; disease control program will depend on a strong health system with facilities and well trained and motivated personnel (Linstrom *et al.*, 2006). This study has shown that a large percentage (Figure 4.28; Figure 4.29) of students who go to health facilities for treatment also recover from their illnesses.

t. *Relationship between Intervention Programs and Prevalence Rates among secondary schools*

On analysis of variance (ANOVA), the results are shown in Table 4.2. This study has revealed that health seeking behavior is an important public health intervention program that should be enforced in all schools (Figure 4.29).

Table 4.2 : ANOVA for public health intervention programs among secondary schools

Intervention Program	Statistical Indices		
	df	F	Significance at 95% Confidence Interval
Safe water provision	2	1.031	0.368 (ns)
Insecticide Treated Mosquito Net Use (ITN)	2	0.335	0.717 (ns)
Ventilation in Hostels	2	0.849	0.437 (ns)
Health seeking behavior	6	340.995	0.000 (ss)
Bed Spacing in Hostels	2	0.276	0.761 (ns)
Desk Spacing in Classrooms	2	0.307	0.738 (ns)
Ventilation in Classrooms	2	0.824	0.447 (ns)
Condition of Classrooms	2	0.074	0.929 (ns)
Hand washing before eating	3	0.839	0.482 (ns)
Water only at hand washing area	2	0.214	0.809 (ns)
Water and soap at hand washing area	2	0.402	0.672 (ns)
Water, soap, and disposal towel at hand washing area	1	0.020	0.889 (ns)
Condition of eating area	3	1.640	0.199 (ns)
Kitchen Staff Hygiene	2	0.308	0.737 (ns)
Student-Toilet Ratio	2	0.099	0.906 (ns)
Hand washing after defecation	2	0.471	0.628 (ns)
Solid waste disposal	2	0.780	0.930 (ns)
Liquid waste disposal	3	0.308	0.819 (ns)
Mosquito breeding control	3	0.173	0.914 (ns)

Key: ns- there is not strong evidence that the intervention has effect ss- there is strong evidence that the intervention has effect

## CHAPTER FIVE

### V. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

#### a) Introduction

This chapter is divided into four sections, namely summary of findings; conclusions which are based on the findings of the three research objectives; recommendations are given in terms of policy statements for the control and prevention of communicable diseases in secondary schools; and suggestions for further research based on research priorities for gaining a better understanding of the challenges of communicable diseases in secondary schools.

#### b) Summary of findings

A total of 400 (out of 60 230) students in 38 (out of 187) secondary schools were sampled in Kisumu County in the year 2014. The most predominant student age bracket was 14-17 years forming 67.8% of the sampled population. By gender, the male students were 53% while female population was 43%. More students were Catholics (33.8%), while 2.0% did not belong to any religious grouping.

Computed communicable disease prevalence rates revealed that Malaria 20 700 (20.7%) per 100 00,

Diarrhea 15 100 per 100 000 (15.1%), Tuberculosis 7200 per 100 000 (7.2%), and pneumonia 5200 per 100 000 (5.2%) were the most important communicable diseases among students in secondary schools in Kisumu County, Kenya.

There was no significant association between school locality and prevalence rates of communicable diseases. However, type of school, size of school, gender and age of the student, and class of the student were significantly associated with the prevalence rates of communicable diseases among secondary students in Kisumu County, Kenya. Prevalence rate of malaria was higher in male students (14.02%) than female students (6.68%) compared to prevalence of diarrhea which was higher in female students (7.96%) than male students.

Insecticide treated mosquito net use was the best practice in Malaria control among students in secondary schools. Provision of water at handwashing area was best practice for diarrhea control while health seeking behavior among secondary school students was the gold standard for control of the burden of communicable diseases.

#### c) Conclusions

This study has revealed that prevalence of diarrhea, tuberculosis, pneumonia and other respiratory

tract infections are lower among female secondary school students than males, and that prevalence of malaria is higher in males than females. These differences are more due to differences in exposure than the differences in immunity. Male students spend more time outside houses in their normal life than female students and therefore exposed more to mosquito bites than females while females spend a lot more time in the households caring for the sick and changing nappies, for example, and more exposed to diarrhea, tuberculosis and pneumonia causing pathogens.

Age of secondary school students is a significant vulnerability factor to Malaria, diarrhea, tuberculosis and pneumonia which were the important communicable diseases most prevalent among secondary school students in Kisumu County, Kenya.

Provision of water only for hand washing, and health seeking behavior were the best public health interventions practices observed among secondary schools and students respectively in Kisumu County, Kenya.

#### d) Recommendations

- Education about causes of malaria, diarrhea, tuberculosis and pneumonia; clinical features and prevention to be an important part of the curriculum for all schools in areas where students are at risk of infection.
- National communicable disease control programs to play increasing attention to the problem of malaria, diarrhea, tuberculosis and pneumonia among secondary school students.
- All secondary schools to provide running water for hand washing to prevent diarrhea, tuberculosis and pneumonia infections.

#### e) Suggestions for further research

- Epidemiology

Acquisition of better knowledge of the magnitude and features of communicable diseases in secondary schools, especially, in areas where the overall incidence of communicable diseases is declining.

- Prevention

Gender roles and prevalence of communicable diseases among students should be explored.

Establishment of functional school health units with trained school health nurses to diagnose using rapid diagnostic tests, and treat effectively in different settings malaria and tuberculosis infections. This will improve students' health seeking behavior which is a flagship in communicable disease control.

## VI. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

My sincere thanks go to my supervisors Professor J. Wakhungu and Dr S. Omuterema, both of department of Disaster Management and Sustainable Development for their academic guidance and ensuring that I am kept on my toes, not only during the writing of this thesis but also as I pursued the entire course. I cannot forget my classmates for their co-operation, support and group discussions which enlightened me a great deal.

Last but not least, I am grateful to everyone who contributed to my studies in one way or another, though not mentioned here by name, may God bless you all.

## REFERENCES RÉFÉRENCES REFERENCIAS

1. Adan, H.I.D. (2010). Study of prevalence of malaria, acute respiratory infection and diarrheal disease among children under 5 years of age in camps for internally displaced persons in Mogadishu, Somalia. WHO Regional Office for Eastern Mediterranean.
2. African Medical and Research Foundation [AMFREF] (2004). Communicable Diseases. A Manual for Health Workers in Sub-Saharan Africa. AMREF. Nairobi.
3. Ahmed, M., Alam, M., Rao, K.R., Kauser, F., Kumar, N.A., Qazi, N.N. (2004). Molecular genotyping of large, multi-centric collection of tubercle bacilli indicates geographical partitioning of strain variation: Implications in Global epidemiology of M. tuberculosis. J Clin Microbiol; 42: 3240-7.
4. Akol (2000). Knowledge, Attitudes and Sexual Behavior of young people towards HIV/AIDS.
5. American Heart Association [AHA] (2011). Heart-Health Screening. Washington DC.
6. American Lung Association [ALA] (2013). Available at: <http://www.lung.org>. (Accessed on 14 December, 2013)
7. Amin, A.A. Zurovac, D., Kangwana, B.B., Greenfield, J., Otieno, D.N., Akhwale, W.S., and Snow, R.W. (2007). The challenges of changing national malaria drug policy to artemisinin based combinations in Kenya. Malar J6:72.
8. Anna, B., Huilai, M., Jianming, O., Ward, B., Timothy, L., Erick, M., Robert, M.H., and Stephen, L. (2007). A Cluster-Randomized Control Trial Evaluating the Effect of A Hand Washing-Promotion Program in Chinese Primary Schools. Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg. 76(6): 1166-1173.
9. Anne M. (2011). Hand Hygiene Knowledge Cuts Risks of Transmitting Infection. American Journal of Infection Control, August, 2011.
10. Anderson, W. (2004). Natural histories of infectious disease: ecological vision in twentieth century. Biomedical science. Osiris; 19:39-61.
11. Anschuetz G.L., Salmon M.E. and Abel L. (2008). Five years, 85 000 tests later: trends from

- Philadelphia High School STD Screening Program. National STD Prevention Conference. Chicago.
12. Asekun-Olarinmoye, E., Omobuwa, O. and Adebimpe, W.O. (2014). Hand washing: Knowledge, Attitude and Practice and mothers of Under-Five children in Osogbo, Osun State, Nigeria. *Journal of Biology, Agriculture and Healthcare* Vol.4 No.16, 2014.
  13. Atieli, H.Z., Zhon, G., Afrane, Y. (2011). Insecticide treated net (ITN) ownership, usage, and malaria transmission in the highlands of western Kenya. *Parasites & Vectors* 4, 112.
  14. Avinash, R., Manoj, K. and Eonkar, J. (2008). Solid-waste management in Jalandhar city and its impact on community health. *Indian J Occup Environ Med.* 12 (2):76-81.
  15. Ayesha H. (2010). Magnitude and determinants of noncompliance to treatment among pulmonary tuberculosis patients under DOTS in Lahore District, Pakistan. WHO Regional Office for Eastern Mediterranean.
  16. Bailey, R., Moses, S., Parker, C., Agot, K., Maclean, I., Krieger, J., Williams, C., Campbell, R., and Ndinya-Achola, J. (2007). "Male Circumcision for HIV prevention in young men in Kisumu, Kenya: a randomized control trial." *The Lancet*; 369, (9562).
  17. Baker, M.G., McDonald, A., Zhang, J., Howden-Chapman, P. (2013). Infectious diseases attributable to household crowding in New Zealand: A Systematic review and burden of disease estimate. Available at <http://www.healthyhousing.org.nz/publications>. Accessed on 30 November 2014.
  18. Barmby, T. & Larguem, M. (2009). Coughs and sneezes spread diseases: an empirical study of absenteeism and infectious illnesses. *J Health Econ* 28: 1012-1017.
  19. Barry, M., Allegrante, J.P. and Lamarre. M.C. (2009). The Galway Consensus Conference: International collaboration on the development of core competencies for health promotion and health education. *Global Health Promotion*, 16; 5-11.
  20. Beguin, A., Hales, S., Rocklove, J., Astrom, C., Louis, V.R. and Sauerborn, R. (2011). The opposing effects of climate change and socio-economic development of the global distribution of malaria. *Global Environmental Change* 21: 1209-1214.
  21. Bernnett, T. & Whiteside, A. (2002). *AIDS in the Twenty-First Century: Disease and Globalization*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
  22. Boschi-Pinto, C., Velebit, L., Shibaya, K. (2008). Estimating child mortality due to diarrhea in developing countries. *Bull World Health Organ* 86:710-717.
  23. Bosello, F., Roson, R. and Tol, R.S.J. (2006). Economy-Wide estimates of the implications of climate change: human health. *Ecological Economics* 58: 579-591.
  24. Boyce C. and Neal P. (2006). *Conducting in-depth interviews: A guide for designing and conducting in-depth interviews for evaluation*. Monitoring and Evaluation 2. Pathfinder International Tool Series.
  25. Brooker, S., Guyatt, H., Omumbo, J. (2000). Situation analysis of malaria in school-age children in Kenya- what can be done? *Parasitology Today* 16, 183-186.
  26. Brownson, R.C., Fielding, J.E., & Maylahn, C.M. (2009). Evidence-based Public Health: A Fundamental Concept for Public Health Practice. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 30:175-201.
  27. Bryce, J., Victoria, C.G., Habicht, J.P., Vaughan, J.P., Black, R.E. (2004). The multi-country evaluation of the integrated management of childhood illness strategy; lessons for the evaluation of public health interventions. *Am J Public Health*; 94(3):406-15.
  28. Burstrom, B., Macassa, G., Oberg, L., Bemhardt, E., Smedman, L. (2005). Equitable child health interventions: the impact of improved water and sanitation on inequalities in child mortality in Stockholm, 1878 to 1925. *Am J Public Health*; 95(2):208-16.
  29. Cameiro, I., Roca-Felter, A., Griffin, J.T. (2010). Age Patterns of malaria vary with severity, transmission intensity and seasonality in sub-Saharan Africa: a systematic review and pooled analysis. *PLoSone* 5, e8988.
  30. Canadian Medical Association Journal (2002). *CMAJ*. AUG. 6, 2000; 167 (3).
  31. Carr-Hill, R., Katabaro, K.J., Katahoire, A.R., & Oulai, D. (2002). *The Impact of HIV/AIDS on Education and Institutionalizing Preventive Education*. Paris: International Institute of Educational Planning.
  32. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] (2013). *Infectious Diseases-Adolescents and School Health*. Available at <http://www.cdc.gov/health> (Accessed on 22 August 2013). Washington DC.
  33. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] (2010). Nation's teen vaccination coverage increasing but below 2010 goals. URL: <http://www.cdc.gov/media/pressed/2008/r08/009.htm>. (Accessed 30 August 2013)
  34. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (2009). *Hand Washing: Clean hands Saves Lives*. Available at <http://www.cdc.gov/handwashing/> Accessed on 22 August 2014.
  35. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] (2007). *Summary Health Statistics for US Children: National Health Interview Survey*. Washington DC.
  36. Chandra A., Martin S.C. and Collins R.L. (2008). Does watching sex on television predict teen pregnancy? Findings from a national longitudinal survey of youth. *Pediatrics*; 122:1047-54.

37. Christley, R.M., Pinchbeck, G.L. and Bower, R.G. (2005). Infections in social networks: using network analysis to identify high-risk individuals. *Am J Epidemiol.*; 162 (10): 1024-1031.
38. Clasen, T., Roberts, I., Schmidt, W., Cairncross, S. (2006). Interventions to improve water quality for preventing diarrhea. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*; 3: CD004794.
39. Cohall, A., Kassotis, J., Parks, R., Vaughan, R., Bannister & Northridge. (2001). HIV/AIDS; Knowledge, Attitudes and Opinions among Adolescents in the River States of Nigeria, Joint National Association.
40. Cohen, F., Kemeny, M.E., Zegans, L.S., Johnson, P., Kearney, K.A., Stites, D.P. (2007). Immune function declines with unemployment and recovers after stressor termination. *Psychosom Med*; 69(3): 225-34.
41. Cohen D., Wu S., and Farley J. (2004). Comparing the cost-effectiveness of HIV prevention interventions. *J AIDS*; 37:1404-14.
42. Cohen D., Nsunami M. and Etame R. (1998). A school based Chlamydia Control Program using DNA amplification strategy. *Pediatrics*; 101:E1.
43. Cookfair J.M. (1991). *Nursing Care in the Community*. Second Edition. Mosby, St. Louis.
44. Corvalan, C.F., Hales, S., McMichael, A.J. (2005). *Ecosystem and Human Well-Being: Health Synthesis*. Geneva: World Health Organization.
45. County Government of Kisumu (CGoK) (2013). *First County Integrated Development Plan (2013-2017)*. Kisumu: Kisumu County Government.
46. Creswell, J. (2008). *Educational Research: Planning, Conducting and evaluating quantitative and qualitative research*. New Jersey: Pearson: Merrill Prentice Hall.
47. CSDH (2008). *Closing the gap in generation: Health equity through action on the social determinants of health. Final report of the Commission on Social Determinants of Health*. Geneva. WHO.
48. Dai, I., Konate, L. & Samb, B. (2008). Bionomics of malaria vectors and relationship with malaria transmission and epidemiology in three physiographic zones in Senegal River Basin. *Acta Tropica* 105, 145-153.
49. Dancia, C., Susan, R., and Raymond, T. (2013). *Asset Based Community Development*. North western University. Evanston. Available at <http://www.abcdinstitute.org> (Accessed on 18 August 2013).
50. Daphne T.M. (2000). *An Analysis of Health Inspection as a Component of School Health Service*, in Kwazulu-Natal. University of Natal, Durban. South Africa.
51. David L.H. (2013). *Global Perspective in Health*. Vol.1, Prevention and control of communicable diseases. World Health Organization (WHO). Geneva.
52. Davies, H.C., Nutley, S.M., & Smith, P.C. (2000). *What works? Evidence-based policy and practice in public services*. Bristol: the Policy Press.
53. Dijksterhuis A., Corneille O. and Arts H. (2004). Yes, there is a preferential detection of negative stimuli: a response to Labiouse. *Psychol Sci*; 15:571-2.
54. Donald B., Shaoffer S. and Jakes M. (2006). *Diseases Control Priorities in Developing Countries*, 2nd Edition. Washington (DC): Jamison. World Bank; Chapter 58.
55. Dongre A.R., Deshmukh P.R., and Garg B.S. (2011). Health Needs of Ashram schools in Rural Wardha. *OJHAS Vol.10, issue 1: (Jan-March 2011)*. URL [http://www.ojhas.org/issues\\_37/2011-1-2.html](http://www.ojhas.org/issues_37/2011-1-2.html). (Accessed on 29 August 2013).
56. Dubois-Arber F., Jeannin A. and Konings E. (1997). Increased condom use without other major changes in sexual behavior among the general population in Switzerland. *Am J Publ Health*; 87:558-66.
57. Eaton & Araoye (2008). *HIV/AIDS Knowledge, Attitudes and Opinions among Adolescents in the River States of Nigeria*, Joint National Medical Association.
58. Egger, M., Davey, S.G. & Altman, B.G. (2001). *Systematic Reviews in Healthcare: Meta-analysis in context*. London: BMJ Books.
59. Einterz, E.M. and Bates, M.E. (1997). Fever in Africa: do patients know when they are hot? *Lancet* 350: 781.
60. Eisenberg, J.N., Scott, J.C., Porco, T. (2007). Integrating disease control strategies: balancing water sanitation and hygiene interventions to reduce diarrheal disease burden. *Am J Public Health*; 97(5): 846-52.
61. Eisenberg, J.N., Lewis, B.L. and Porco, T.C. (2005). Bias due to secondary transmission in estimation of attributable risk from intervention trials. *Epidemiology*; 14 (4):442-450.
62. Eisenberg, J.N., Lewis, B.L., Porco, T.C., Hubbard, A.H., Colford, J.M. Jr (2003). Bias due to secondary transmission in estimation of attributable risk from intervention trials. *Epidemiology*; 14(4):442-450. PubMed.
63. El-Gilany, A.H. & Hammads, S. (2005). Epidemiology of diarrheal diseases among children under age 5 years in Dakahlia, Egypt. *East Mediterr Health J*; 11(4):762-75.
64. Ellis, A.A., Winch, P., Daou, Z., Gilrory, K.E., Swedberg, E. (2007). Home management of childhood diarrhea in southern Mali- Implications for the introduction of zinc treatment. *Soc Si Med*; 64(3): 701-12.
65. Epstein, J.L. and Sheldon, S.B. (2002). Present and accounted for: Improving student attendance

- through family and community involvement. *Journal of Educational Research*, 95, 308-318.
66. Fatma, A. and A., Ibrahim (2011). Prevalence and predisposing factors regarding intestinal parasitic infections among rural primary pupils at Minia Governorate, Egypt. *Journal of Public Health in Africa*; Vol., 2:e29, June 24.
  67. Fillinger, U. & Lindsay, S.W. (2011). Larval source management for malaria control in Africa: myths and reality. *Malaria Journal*10, 353.
  68. Gaydos C.A., Wright C. and Wood B.J. (2008). Chlamydia trachomatis reinfection rates in school based health centers. *Sex Transm Dis* 2008; 35:233-7.
  69. Gitonga, C.W., Edwards, T., Karanja, P.N. (2012). Plasmodium infection, anemia and mosquito net use among school children across different settings in Kenya. *Tropical Medicine and International Health*17, 858-870.
  70. Gitonga, C.W., Karanja, P.N., Kihara, J. (2010). Implementing School Malaria Surveys in Kenya: towards a national Surveillance System. *Malaria Journal*9, 306.
  71. Glynn, J.R., Carael, M., Anvert, B., Kahindo, M., Chege, J., Musonda, R., Kaona, F., Buve, A. (2001). "Why do young women have a much higher prevalence of HIV than young men? A study in Kisumu, Kenya and Ndola, Zambia."
  72. Government of Kenya [GoK] (2013). Kisumu County Education brief statistics as at 30th April 2013. Government Printer. Nairobi.
  73. Government of Kenya [GoK] (2012). Education Sector. Medium Term Expenditure 2012/2013-2014/15. January 2012. Government Printer, Nairobi.
  74. Government of Kenya [GoK] (2012). Kenya Health Sector Strategic Plan (KHSSP) July 2012-June 2017: Transforming Health; Accelerating attainment of Health Goals.
  75. Government of Kenya [GoK] (2011). Children Act 2011. Government Printer. Nairobi.
  76. Government of Kenya [GoK] and UNDP (2010). Progress in Attainment of MGDs and Way Forward towards Achieving MDGs by 2015 in Kenya. (Nairobi; UNDP).
  77. Government of Kenya [GoK] (2010). The Constitution of Kenya. Government Printer. Nairobi.
  78. Government of Kenya [GoK] (2010). Population and Housing Census. Ministry of Planning. Government Printer, Nairobi.
  79. Government of Kenya [GoK] (2008). Safety Standard Manual for Schools in Kenya. Government Printer, Nairobi.
  80. Government of Kenya [GoK] (2005). National Health Sector Strategic Plan (NHSSP II). Ministry of Health 2005 – 2010. Nairobi.
  81. Government of Kenya [GoK] (2004). Central Bureau of Statistics (CBS) and ORC Macro. Kenya Demographic and Health Survey 2003. Nairobi: Central Bureau of Statistics and Ministry of Health.
  82. Government of Malawi [GoM] (2000). Malawi Demographic and Health Survey. National Statistical Office. Zomba.
  83. Government of New Zealand [GoN] (2003). Ministry of Health. Guidelines for tuberculosis control in New Zealand. Wellington. Available at: <http://www.moh.govt.nz/cd/tbcontrol>. (Accessed on 29 August 2013)
  84. Government of Zambia [GoZ] (2006). Zambia Malaria Indicator Survey 2006. Lusaka: Ministry of Health, Zambia.
  85. Greenland, S., Gugo-Domoniquez, M., Castlelao, J.E. (2004). The value of risk factor ("black-box") epidemiology. *Epidemiology*; 15 (5): 529-535.
  86. Greenwood, B.A. (2008). A global action plan for the prevention and control of pneumonia. *Bull World Health Organ*; 86: 322-322A.
  87. Greenwood, B.M., Weber, M.W., Mulholland, K. (2007). Childhood pneumonia-preventing the worlds' biggest killer of children. *Bull World Health Organ*; 85:502-503.
  88. Hay, S.I., Simber, M, Busolo, M., Noor, A.M., Guyatt, H.L., Ochola, S.A. (2002). Defining and detecting malaria epidemics in the highlands of western Kenya. *Emerg Infect Dis*. 8:555-62.
  89. Hayden, F. and Croisier, A. (2005). Transmission of avian influenza viruses to and between humans. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*; 192(8): 1311-1314.
  90. Henderson, A.T. and Mapp, K.L. (2002). A new wave of Evidence-The Impact of School, Family, and Community Connections on Student Achievement. Nature Center for Family and Community Connections with Schools, Southwest Educational Development Laboratory. Available at <http://www.sell.org/connections/> (Accessed on 20 August 2013).
  91. Hirjarvi, Sirkka, Hurme and Helena (2000). Research Interview- theory and practice of thematic Interview. Yliopistopaino. Helsinki.
  92. Hunter, D.J. (2005). Gene-environment interactions in human diseases. *Nature Rev Genetics*; 6(4): 287-298.
  93. International Labor Organization [ILO] (2004a). HIV/AIDS and work: global estimates, impact and response (Revised Edition). Switzerland: ILO.
  94. Jeong, J.S., Choi, J.K., Jeong, I.S., Paek K.R., In, H.K., Park, K.D. (2007). A Nationwide Survey on Hand Washing Behavior and Awareness. *Journal of Preventive Medicine and Public Health* 40(3):97-204.
  95. Jonathan, A. P. and Olson, S.H. (2006). Malaria risk and temperature: Influence from global climate change and local land control on childhood anemia in Africa-a qualitative review. *Trop Med Intl Health*9: 1050-1065.

96. Kabatereine, N.B., Standley, C.J., Sousa-Figueiredo, J.C. (2011). Integrated prevalence mapping of schistosomiasis, soil-transmitted helminthiasis and malaria in lakeside and island communities in Lake Victoria, Uganda. *Parasites and Vectors* 4, 232.
97. Kenya National Bureau of Standards [KNBS] and ORC Macro (2009). Kenya Demographic and Health Survey 2008-2009. (Nairobi: Kenya National Bureau of Statistics).
98. Kenya National Bureau of Statistics (KNBS) and United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF) (2013), Kisumu County Multiple Indicator Cluster Survey 2011. Nairobi, KNBS and UNICEF.
99. Kenya National Bureau of Statistics (KNBS) and Society for International Development (SID) (2013). Exploring Kenya's Inequality: Pulling Apart or Pooling Together. Nairobi: KNBS and SID.
100. Keusch, G.T., Fontaine, O., Bhargava, A., Boschi-Pinto, C., Bhutta, Z.A., Gotuzzo, E., Rivera, J., Shalid-Selles, S.A., Laxminayaran, R. (2006). Diarrheal Diseases. Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries. Second Edition. Washington: World Bank.
101. Kimbi, H.K., Sumbele, I.U., Nweboh, M. (2013). Malaria and Hematologic parameters of pupils at different altitudes along the slope of Mount Cameroon: a cross-sectional study. *Malaria Journal* 9, 193.
102. Kirby D. (2008). Changes in sexual behavior leading to the decline in the prevalence of HIV in Uganda: Confirmation from multiple sources of evidence. Kampala.
103. Kisumu West Health and Demographic Surveillance System [KWHDS] (2011). Walter Reed Project. Kisumu.
104. Koopman, M., Wilbrink, B, Conyn, M., Natrop, G., van der Nat, H., Vennema, H., Meijer, A., van Steenberghe, J., Fouchier, R., Osterhaus, A. (2004). Transmission of H1N1 avian influenza A virus to human beings during a large outbreak in commercial poultry farms in the Netherlands. *Lancet*; 363 (9409): 587-593.
105. Lalloo, U. and Pillay, S. (2008). Managing tuberculosis and HIV in sub-Saharan Africa. *Current HIV/AIDS report*, 2008; 5: 132-139.
106. Lash, T.L. & Fink, A.K. (2003). Semi-automated sensitivity analysis to assess systematic errors in observational data. *Epidemiology*; 14(4):451-458.
107. Law S., Braun K.A. (2000). I'll have what she's having: Gauging the impact of product placements on viewers. *Psycho Market*; 17:1059-75.
108. Leighton, C. & Foster, R. (1993). Economic Impacts of Malaria in Kenya and Nigeria, Report submitted to the office of Health. USAID, Washington.
109. Lengeler, C. (2004). Insecticide treated bed nets and curtains for preventing malaria. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, CD000363.
110. Leenstra, T., Philip's-Howard, P.A., Kariuki, S.E. (2003). Permethrin-treated bed nets in the prevention of malaria and anemia in adolescent school girls in western Kenya. *American Journal of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene* 68, 86-93.
111. Leslie, E.G., Matthew, C.F., Daniel, A., Shadi, S., Christine, M. and Richard, R. (2012). Impact of a School-Based Hygiene Promotion and Sanitation Intervention on Pupil Hand Contamination in Western Kenya: A Cluster Randomized Trial. *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.* 87(3): 385-393.
112. Lester C., Jane R. and Michael H. (2008). A school and community outbreak of tuberculosis in Palmerston North, New Zealand. *Journal of the New Zealand Medical Association*.
113. Lim, S.S., Fullman, N., Stokes, A. (2011). Net benefits: a multicounty analysis of observational data examining associations between insecticides treated mosquito nets and health outcomes. *PLoS Medicine* 8, e1001091.
114. Limlim, R. (2008). Goodwill Message during the National Launch of Hand Washing Campaign held at Sheraton Hotels and Towers Abuja on May 22 2008. Available at [http://www.unicef.org/nigeria/media\\_2364.html](http://www.unicef.org/nigeria/media_2364.html) Accessed on 22 August 2014.
115. Linblende, K.A., Walker, E.D. and Onapu, W. (2000). Land use change alters Malaria transmission parameters by modifying temperature in a highland area in Uganda. *Trop Med Int Health*; 5(4): 263-274.
116. Lodico, M., Spaulding, D., and Voegtle, K. (2006). *Methods in educational research: From theory to practice*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
117. Lubanga, R.G., Norman, S., Ewbank, D. and Kramagi, C. (1997). Maternal diagnosis and treatment of children's fever in an endemic malaria zone of Uganda: implications for the malaria control program. *Acta Trop* 68: 53-64.
118. MacIntyre, S., Chalmers, I. and Horton (2001). Using evidence to inform health policy: Case study, *BMJ*, 322: 222-225.
119. Maps of World (2012). Available at <http://www.mapsofworld.com> (Accessed 14 February 2013).
120. Mathooka M. (2009). Actualizing Free Primary Education in Kenya for Sustainable Development. *The Journal of Pan African Studies*, Vol. 2, No. 8, March.
121. Marmot, M. (2011). *The Marmot Review. Fair Society, Health Lives. Strategic Review of Health Inequalities in England post-2010*.
122. Marmot, M. & Bell, R. (2009). How will the financial crisis affect health? *British Medical Journal* 338: 1314.

123. Markina, S., Maksimova, N. and Vitek, C. (2000). Diphtheria in the Russian Federation in the 1990s. *J Infect Dis* 181: 527-34.
124. Martin, E.A. (2010). *Oxford Concise Medical Dictionary* 8th edition.
125. Martyn, S. (2008). Validity and Reliability. Accessed Dec 16 2014 from explorable. com: <http://explorable.com/validity-and-reliability>.
126. Masebo, V.K. (2010). The Impact of HIV/AIDS on The Health Care Provision in Lesotho: Perceptions of health providers. University of Kwa Zulu- Natal. Durban, South Africa.
127. Masike, C.G., and Mojekwa, J.N. (2012). Environmental Determinants of Child Mortality in Nigeria. *Journal of Sustainable Development* Vol. 5 No.1, 65-75.
128. McMichael, A.J., Butler, C.D. (2004). Climate change, health and development goals. *Lancet*; 364(9450) 2004-2006. PubMed.
129. McMichael, A.J., Martens, P. (2002). *Environmental change, Climate and Health; Issues and Research Methods*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
130. McMichael, A.J. (2001). *Human Frontiers, Environments and Disease: Past Patterns, Uncertain Futures*. Cambridge/New York: Cambridge University Press.
131. Mead P.S., Slutsker L. and Diezt V. (1999). Food related illness and death in the United States, *Emerging Infectious Diseases*; 5(5): 607-625.
132. Merson, M.H., Blach, R.E., Mills, A.J. (Eds) (2005). *International Public Health. Second Edition*. Boston: Jones and Bartlett Publishers.
133. Miguel E. and Kremer M. (2004). Worms. Identifying Impacts on Education and Health in the Presence of Treatment Externalities. *Econometrica*. Vol. 72: 159-217.
134. Mills, A.J., Rasheed, F., Tollman, F. (2006). Strengthening Health Systems. In: Jamison, D. Measham, R, Cleason, M (Eds). *Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries, Second Edition*. Washington: World Bank.
135. Mitra, A., Rahman, M., Fuchs, G. (2000). Risk factors and gender differentials for death among children hospitalized with diarrhea in Bangladesh. *Journal of Infectious Diseases* 179 (Suppl 1): S 11-12.
136. Mohiabi, Van Aswegen, E.J., and Mokoena, J.D. (2010). Barriers to the successful implementation of school health services in Mpumalanga and Gauteng Provinces. *SA Fam Prac*; 52 (3): 249-254.
137. Mournie, M. (2011). Health Needs Assessment for Kisumu, Kenya. MCI Social Sector Working Paper Series No. 19/2011.
138. Muna B. M. E. (2010). Effect of Zinc supplementation on morbidity due to diarrhea in infants and children in Elsabeen Hospital in Sana'a, Yemen. WHO Regional Office for Eastern Mediterranean.
139. Musembi N. (2010). Universalizing Access to Primary Education in Kenya: Myths and Realities. *Canadian Journal for New Scholars in Education. Special Issue*. August.
140. Nankabirwa, J.I., Wandera, B., Amuge, P. (2014). Impacts of intermittent preventive treatment with dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine on malaria in Ugandan school children: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 58, 1404-1412.
141. Nankabirwa, J., Wandera, B., Kiwanuka, N., Staedke, S.G., Kanya, M.R. & Brooker, S.J. (2013). Asymptomatic plasmodium infection and cognition among primary school children in a high malaria transmission setting in Uganda. *American Journal of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene* 88, 1102-1108.
142. Nankabirwa, j., Cundil, B., Clarke, S. (2010). Efficacy, Safety, and tolerability of three regimes for prevention of malaria: a randomized placebo-controlled trial in Ugandan School-children. *PLoSone* 5, e13438.
143. Nicholas, M.D., Gysje, J.P., Daniel, A.L., Tsin, W.Y., Enny, k., Anne, P.R., Michael, J.B., Paulus, S., Nicholas, M.A., Rice, N.P. (2014). Mortality attributable to plasmodium vivax malaria: a clinical audit from Papua, Indonesia. *BMC Medicine* 12:217.
144. Niyaz, A. and Seyed, E.H. (2004). Genomics of Mycobacterium tuberculosis; old threats and new trends. Centre for DNA Finger Printing and Diagnostics, Hyderabad, India. *Indian J Med Res* 120 October 2004.
145. Nkuo Akenji, T.K., Ajame, E.A. & Achidi, E.A. (2002). Investigation of symptomatic malaria parasitaemia and anemia in nursery and primary school children in Buea District Cameroon. *Central African Journal of Medicine* 15, 5-10.
146. Noor, A.M., Kinyoki, D.K., Mundia, C.W. (2014). The changing risk of plasmodium falciparum malaria infection in Africa: 2000-10: a spatial and temporal analysis of transmission intensity. *The Lancet* 383, 1739-1749.
147. Noor, A.M., Kirui, V.C., Brooker, S.J. & Snow, R.W. (2009). The use of insecticide treated nets by age: implications for universal coverage in Africa. *BMC Public Health* 9, 369.
148. Noor, A.M., Amin, A.A., Akhwaleh, W.S., and Snow, R.W. (2007). Increasing coverage and decreasing inequity in insecticide treated bed net use among rural Kenyan children. *PLoS. Med* 4:e255.
149. Nsunami M. and Cohen D. (2000). Participation in a school based sexually transmitted disease screening program. *Sex Transm Dis*; 27:473-9.
150. Ochoa, T.J., Salazar-Lindo, E., Cleary, T.G. (2004). Management of children with infection-

- associated persistent diarrhea. *Semin Pediatr Dis*; 15(40): 229-36.
151. Oduro, A.R., Conway, D.J., Schellenberg, D. (2013). Seroepidemiological and parasitological evaluation of the heterogeneity of malaria infection in the Gambia. *Malaria Journal* 12, 222.
  152. OECD (2009). Workshop on structural reforms and economic resilience: evidence and policy implications. Paris.
  153. Oindo, C.O., Otieno, C.F. and Okeyo, N.O. (2009). Characteristics of Households Experiencing under-Five Deaths: A case of Tropical Institute of Community Health and Development (TICH) Partnership Districts. *African Journal of Food Agriculture Nutrition and Development*. Vol. 9 No.3 May.
  154. O'Meara, W.P., Mangeni, J.N., Skeketee, R & Greenwood, B. (2010). Changes in the burden of malaria in sub-Saharan Africa. *The Lancet Infectious Diseases* 10, 545-555.
  155. Pandey, A. (2002). Gender differences in health-seeking during common illnesses in a rural community of West Bengal, India. *Journal of Health Population and Nutrition*, 20:306-311.
  156. Pamela, Y. (2010). WASH in schools. Congressional Briefing, October 2010.
  157. Parks K. (2008). Parks Textbook of Preventive and Social Medicine 19th Ed. MIS Banarsida Bhanot 1167 PREM NAGAR, JABAL PUR, 48 2001 (INDIA): 523-25.
  158. Parkens, M.W., Bionen, L., Breilh, J., HSU L-N, McDonald, M., Patz, J.A. (2005). All hands on deck: trans disciplinary approaches to emerging infectious diseases. *Eco Health*; 2(4):258-272.
  159. Parkes, M., Panelli, R., Weinstein, P. (2003). Converging paradigms for environmental health theory and practice. *Environ Health Perspect*; 111:669-675. PubMed.
  160. Patz A.S., Daszak, P., Tabor, G.M., Aguirre, A.A., Pearl, M., Epstein, J. (2004). Unhealthy landscapes: policy recommendations on land use change and infectious disease emergence. *Environ Health Perspect*; 112; 1092-1098. PubMed.
  161. Patz, J.A., Graczyk, T.K., Geller, N., Vittor, A.Y. (2000). Effects of environmental change on emerging parasitic diseases. *Int J Parasitol*; 30(12-13):1395-1405. PubMed.
  162. Pazhani, G.P., Sarkar, B., Ramamurthy, T., Bhattacharya, S.K. (2004). Clonal multi-drug resistant shigella dysenteriae and sporadic dysenteries in eastern India. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*; 48(2): 681-4.
  163. Peter, W.G., David, L.S., An and, P.P., Andrew, J.T., Robert, W.S., Simon, I.H. (2010). Climate change and the global malaria recession. *Nature* 465: 342-345.
  164. Pimentel, D., Tort, M. and D'Anna, L. (1998). Ecology of increasing disease. *Bioscience*; 48 (10): 817-826.
  165. Pullan, R.L., Bukirwa, H., Staedke, S.G. (2010). Plasmodium infection and its risk factors in eastern Uganda. *Malaria Journal* 9, 2.
  166. Punch K. (2005). Introduction to Social Research: Qualitative and Quantitative approach. India. Chennai.
  167. Raphael, D. (2010). Health Promotion and quality of life in Canada. Essential Readings. Toronto, Ontario, Canada: Canadian-Scholar's Press Inc.
  168. Rendi-Wagner, P., Kundi, M., Mikolasek, A., Mutz, I., Zwiauek, K., Wiedermann, U., Vecsei, A., Kollaritsche, H. (2006). Active Hospital-based surveillance of rotavirus diarrhea in Austrian children, period 1997 to 2003. *Wien Klin Wochenschr*; 118(9-10): 280-5.
  169. Reich Michael R (2009). G8 and strengthening of health systems: Follow up to the Toyoko Summit. *The Lancet Journal*, January 15.
  170. Robins, J.M., Herman, M.A., Brumback, B. (2000). Marginal structural models and causal inferences in epidemiology. *Epidemiology*: 11(5):550-560. PubMed.
  171. Rodrigues, A., de Carvalho, M., Monteiro, S., Mikkelsen, C.S., Aaby, P., Molbak, K., Fischer, T.K. (2007). Hospital Surveillance of rotavirus infection and nosoncal transmission of rotavirus disease among children in Guinea- Bissau. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*; 26(3): 233-7.
  172. Rowe, A.K., de Sabigny, Lanata, C.F., Victora, C.G. (2005). How can we achieve and maintain high-quality performance of health workers in low resource settings? *Lancet*; 366 (9490): 1026-35.
  173. Ryan, E.T. & Calderwood, S.B. (2000). Cholera Vaccines. *Clin Infect Dis*; 31(2): 561-5.
  174. Sam., O., Gordon, O.O., Alex, M., Kathleen, W. and Rob, Q. (2010). Evaluation of the Role of School Children in the Promotion of Point-of-Use Water Treatment and Hand washing in Schools and Households- Nyanza Province, Western Kenya, 2007.
  175. Scholthof, K.B. (2007). The disease triangle: pathogens, the environment and society. *Nat Rev Microbiol*; 5(2): 152-6.
  176. Searle, T. (1994). Aspects of Community Health Nursing. Cape Town: Juta and Co. Ltd.
  177. Semenza, J.C. & Giesecke, J. (2008). Intervening on infections in inequality. *American Journal of Public Health*; 98:787-792.
  178. Sharma, S.K. and Mohan, V. (2004). Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. *Indian J Med Res* 2004; 120: 354-76.
  179. Shen, Z., Ning, F. and Zhon, W. (2004). Super-spreading SARS events, Beijing. *Emerg Infect Dis*; 10(2):256-260.

180. Shilova, M. and Dye, C. (2000).The resurgence of tuberculosis in Russia. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 356: 1069-1075.
181. Smith, K.R. and Desai, M.A. (2005).*Environmental change, climate and health: Issues and Research Methods*. Cambridge, UK; Cambridge University Press. The contribution of Global environmental factors to ill-health.
182. Snow, R.W. & Marsh, K. (2002). The consequences of reducing transmission of plasmodium falciparum in Africa. *Advances in Parasitology*52, 235-2295.
183. Speller, V., Wimbush, E. and Morgan, A. (2005). Evidence based health promotion practice: how to make it work. *IUHPE- Promotion and Education Supplement*; 12, 15.
184. Stephanie, W., Fielding J. and Gregory J. (2009). *Victorian Infectious Disease Bulletin*. ISSN: 1 441 0575, Vol. 12, Issue 1, March.
185. Sterling, T.R., Villarino, M.E., Borisov, A.S., Shanq,N., Gordin, F., Bliven-Sizemore, E., Hackman, J., Hamilton, C.D., Menzies, D., Kerrigan, A., Weis, S.E., Weinar, M., Winq, D., Conde, M.B., Bozeman, L., Horsburgh, C.R. Jr., Chaissan, R.E. (2011). Three months of rifapentine and isoniazid for latent tuberculosis infection. *N Engl J Med*. 365 (23):2155-66.
186. Stoilova, Y. & Popivanova, N. (1999).Epidemiologic Studies of leptospirosis in the Plovdiv region of Bulgena. *Folia Med (Plovdiv)* 41:73-79.
187. Stucker, D., Basu, S., Makee, M (2010).How government spending cuts puts lives at risk. *Nature* 465: 289.
188. Sultanate of Oman (2012). *Communicable Diseases Control in the Sultanate of Oman*. Ministry of Health. URL: <http://www.moh.gov.oman>. (Accessed on 22 August 2013).
189. Suk, J.M.D., Bushcher, G., Semenza, J.C. (2009). Wealth inequality and TB elimination in Europe. *Emerging infectious diseases* 15: 1812-1814.
190. Susser, E. (2004). Eco-epidemiology: thinking outside the box. *Epidemiology*;15(5):519-510.
191. Susser, E. & Terry, M.B. (2003).A conception-to-death cohort. *Lancet*; 361(9360):797-798.
192. Tchinda, V.H., Socpa, A., Keundo, A.A. (2012). Factors associated to bed net use in Cameroon: a retrospective study in Mfon health district in the Centre Region. *Pan African Medical Journal*12, 112.
193. Taylor, M., Morar, N. and Memela, D. (1997). *Education of the School Health Service in KwaZulu-Natal*. Department of Community Health, University of Natal.
194. Tol, R.S.J. and Dowlatabadi, H. (2001).Vector borne diseases, development and climate change. *Integrated Assignment*2: 173-181.
195. Tones, K., & Green, J. (2004).*Health Promotion: Planning and Strategies*. London: Sage Publication.
196. Trenholm C., Devaney B. and Fortson K. (2008).Impacts of abstinence education on teen sexual activity, risk of pregnancy, and risk of sexually transmitted diseases. *J Pol Anal Manage*; 27:255-76.
197. Tsu-Fen Chen, Min-Nan Hung and Su-Hua Hung. (2011).Salmonella Food Poisoning Outbreak at School in Kaohsiung County in 2010.*Taiwan Epidemiology Bulletin*. May 3, Vol. 27 No. 9.
198. Uganda Bureau of Statistics [UBOS] (2006). *Uganda Demographic and Health Survey Report, UBOS and Macro International, Columbia, USA*.
199. UN (2011).UN Department of Economic and Social Affairs; Press Release. MDGs Advocacy Group, United Nations-21 Sep. 2011. For more information visit: <http://www.un.org/millenniumgoals/advocates>. (Accessed 8 July 2013)
200. UNAIDS. (2008). Report on the global AIDS epidemic. UNAIDS, Geneva.
201. United Nations Development Program (UNDP), Kenya (2010). *Kenya National Human Development Report 2009*. Nairobi: UNDP Kenya.
202. UNDP (2013).United Nations Millennium Project. Millennium Development Goals. Available at: <http://www.mdgs.un.org/unsd/mdg/data.aspx>. (Accessed on 06 December 2013).
203. United Nations (UN) (2013). Millennium Development Goals Indicators. Rome: UN.
204. United Nations [UN] (2006). World population prospects: Population database. United Nations Population Division. Available at: <http://www.esa.un.org/unpp>. (Accessed on 14 December 2013).
205. UN-HABITAT (2006). *Situation Analysis of Informal Settlements in Kisumu: Cities without Slums Sub – Regional Program for Eastern and Southern Africa*. Kenya Slums Upgrading Program. (Nairobi: UN-HABITAT).
206. United States National Center for Health Statistics [US NCHS] (2009).*National Vital Statistics Report. Deaths: Final Data for 2006, Vol. 57, 14 April 2009*.
207. United States National Library of Medicine [US NLM] and US National Institute of Health. *Medline Plus. Medical Encyclopedia: Mycoplasma Prevention*. Available at: <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000082.htm>. (Accessed on 14 December 2013).
208. UNICEF (2013).Multiple Indicators Cluster Survey [MICS]. New York. NY:UNICEF. Available at: [http://www.unicef.org/statistics/index\\_24302html](http://www.unicef.org/statistics/index_24302html). (Accessed on 14 December 2013).
209. UNICEF. (2000). *The progress of nations*. New York: UNICEF.
210. Vanessa L., Short and Chandra K,(2011).Description and Evaluation of the 2009-2010 Pennsylvania Influenza Sentinel School Monitoring System. *American Journal of Public Health*, 10.2105, May 12.

211. Verdasca, J., Gama MMTd, Nunes, A., Bernardino, N.R., Pacheco, J.M., Gomes, M.C. (2005). Recurrent epidemics in small world networks. *J Theoret Biol*; 233:553-561 PubMed.
212. Vernozy-Rozand, C., Montet, M.P., Lequerree, F., Serillon, E., Tilly, B., Bavali, C., Ray-Gueniot, S., Bouvat, J., Mazuy-Cruchauder, C. and Richard, Y. (2002). Prevalence of verotoxine-producing *Escherichia coli* (VTEC) in slurry, farmyard manure and sewage sludge in France. *J. Appl. Microbiol*; 93:473-478.
213. Vlok M.E. (1988). *Manual of Community Health Nursing*. Cape Town: Juta and Co., Ltd.
214. Wade, R. (2009). Essay on global financial crisis: The crisis as opportunity. *Cambridge Journal of Economics*. doi:10.1093/cje/bep030.
215. Wagstaff, A., Bustreo, F., Bryce, J., Cleason, M. (2004). WHO-World Bank Child Health and Poverty Working Group. Child health: reaching the poor. *Am J Public Health*; 94(5): 726-36.
216. Walkty A., Paul V., Tim H. and Shelly B. (2011). Mumps in Prison: Description of an Outbreak in Manitoba, Canada. *Canadian Journal of Public Health*, Vol., 102, No., 5.
217. Weiss, R.A., McMichael, A.J. (2004). Social and environmental risk factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. *Nat Med*; 10(12).
218. Wilcox, B., Colwell, R. (2005). Emerging and reemerging infectious diseases: bio complexity as an interdisciplinary paradigm. *Eco Health*; 2 (4): 244-257.
219. Wobst, P. & Arndt, C. (2004). HIV/AIDS and Labor Force Upgrading in Tanzania. *World Development*; 32(11): 1831-1847.
220. Woodward, D., Drager, N., Beaglehole, R., Lipson, D. (2001). Globalization and health: a framework for analysis and action. *Bull WHO*; 79(9):875-881.
221. World Health Organization [WHO] (2012). Hepatitis A. Fact Sheet No.328. Available at <http://www.who.int/mediacare/factsheet/fs328/en/> Accessed on 22 August 2014.
222. World Health Organization [WHO] (2011). *World Malaria Report*. Geneva, Switzerland.
223. WHO and UNICEF (2009). *Global Action Plan for Prevention and Control of Pneumonia (GAPP)*. Geneva; 1-23.
224. World Health Organization [WHO] (2009a). H1N1 influenza of 1976; Lessons from the past. Available at: <http://www.who.iny/bulletin/volumes/87/6/09-040609/en/>. (Accessed on 13 December 2013).
225. WHO (2008). Protection of individuals with high poverty contact in areas affected by avian influenza H5N1: Consolidation of preexisting guidance. Available from URL: [http://www.who.int/csr/disease/avian\\_influenza/guidelines/high\\_contact\\_protection/en/index.html](http://www.who.int/csr/disease/avian_influenza/guidelines/high_contact_protection/en/index.html) (Accessed on 8 June 2013).
226. World Health Organization [WHO] (2008). Kenya: Epidemiological Country Profile on HIV and AIDS. World Health Organization and UNAIDS. Available at: [http://app.who.int/globalatlas/predefinedReports/EFSS2008/short/EFSCountryProfiles2008\\_K.E.pdf](http://app.who.int/globalatlas/predefinedReports/EFSS2008/short/EFSCountryProfiles2008_K.E.pdf) (Accessed on 01 January 2014).
227. World Health Organization [WHO] (2007). Kenya Health Profile. World Health Organization. Available at: <http://www.who.int/gho/countries/Ken.pdf> (Accessed on 01 January 2014).
228. World Health Organization [WHO] (2007). AIDS epidemic update. UNAIDS. Geneva.
229. World Health Organization [WHO] (2007). Communicable Diseases Epidemiological Profile for HORN OF AFRICA. Geneva. World Health Organization.
230. World Health Organization [WHO] (2007). *World Health Statistics*. Geneva. Available at: <http://www.who.int/whosis/whostat2007.pdf>. (Accessed on 13 December 2013).
231. World Health Organization [WHO] (2007). Addressing sex, and gender in epidemic prone infectious diseases. Geneva.
232. World Health Organization [WHO] (2005). Overview of Malaria control activities and programs progress. World Health Organization. Available at: <http://rbm.who.int/wmr2005/profiles/Kenya.pdf> (Accessed on 01 January 2014).
233. World Health Organization [WHO] (2005). Avian Influenza A (H5N1) infection in humans. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*; 192(8): 1311-1314.
234. World Health Organization [WHO] (2005). *Global Tuberculosis Control: Surveillance, Planning, Financing*. WHO Report 2005. Geneva, World Health Organization (WHO/HTM/TB/2005.349).
235. World Health Organization [WHO] (2005). "Who Declares TB An Emergency In Africa." World Health Organization news release.
236. World Health Organization [WHO] (2003). Summary Table of SARS by country 1 November 2002-2007 August 2003. At [http://www.who.int/entity/csr/sars/country/country\\_2003\\_08\\_15.pdf](http://www.who.int/entity/csr/sars/country/country_2003_08_15.pdf). Accessed Nov.30, 2004.
237. World Health Organization [WHO] (2002). *World Health Organization Report 2002; Reducing Risks, Promoting Healthy Life*. Geneva. WHO, 2002.
238. World Health Organization [WHO] (2000). *Global Water Supply and Sanitation Assessment 2000*. Geneva: WHO, 2000.
239. World Health Organization [WHO] (1996). *The Status of School Health*. Geneva.
240. World Health Organization [WHO] (1994). TB: A global emergency. World Health Organization: Geneva.
241. Zianghao, C., Rawalai, C., and Thompson, A. (1999). An executive summary of an investigation of weaning food and water contamination and weaning

diarrhea in PRA.YUN sub-district KHON KAEN province, Northeast Thailand, ACITHN Fieldwork Abstracts, 1999; 55.

242. Zhou, G., Minakawa, N, Githeko, A.K., and Yan, G. (2004). Association between climate variability and malaria epidemics in the East African highlands. Proc Natl Acad USA 101: 2375-80.

## APPENDIX I

### Questionnaire for students

#### IDENTIFICATION PAGE

DISTRICT.....  
 LOCALITY..... 1= Rural; 2= Urban  
 EDUCATION ZONE.....  
 SCHOOL NAME.....  
 SCHOOL TYPE.....1= Boys only boarding; 2= Girls only boarding; 3= Boys and Girls day; 4= Boys and Girls day and boarding; 5= Boys only day; 6= Girls only day  
 SCHOOL SIZE.....1= 1- 200; 2= 201- 400; 3= 401- 600; 4= 601 >  
 NAME OF ENUMERATOR.....  
 DATE OF INTERVIEW.....  
 SUPERVISOR.....

#### Confidentiality and consent [Parental/Guardian/Teacher consent should be sought for all students age 10-15 years];

'I'm going to ask you some personal questions.

Your answers are completely confidential.

Your name will never be used in connection with any information you give me.

The purpose of asking these questions is for us to share the burden of communicable diseases in your school with a view of sharing the same with the government in order to improve school health services.

The results of this research will be disseminated to all schools participating in the study and at national level in order to inform public health policy for schools in Kenya.

The interview will take 30 minutes and I will appreciate your help in responding to these questions.

Would you be willing to participate?

Signature of the interviewee....., indicating that an informed consent has been given verbally by the respondent.

### 1.00 DEMOGRAPHIC INFORMATION

1.10 Respondent's Gender.....1= Male; 2= Female

1.11 Respondent's Date of Birth [DD/MM/YYYY]

--	--	--	--

1.12 Respondent's class/Form.....1= F1; 2= F2; 3= F3; 4= F4

1.13 Have you been absent from your class this term? ..... 1= Yes; 2= No

If Yes, give reason.....1= Sickness; 2= School levy; 3= other

(Specify.....)

1.14 Religion..... 1= Anglican; 2= Catholic; 3= SDA; 4= Indigenous Church; 5= Muslim; 6= None; 7= Others  
 (Specify.....)

#### 2.00 MORBIDITY AND HEALTH SEEKING BEHAVIOR

2.10 Have you been ill in this school in the last two weeks? .....1= Yes; 2= No

If yes, answer questions 2.11, 2.12, 2.13 and 2.14.

2.11 Duration of illness.....1= Less than 4 weeks; 2= 4 weeks or >

- 2.12 Type of illness encountered.....1= Malaria; 2= Diarrhea; 3= Tuberculosis (TB); 4= Pneumonia; 5= Other RTI (Specify.....) 6= Pregnancy related; 7= other (Specify.....); 8= Don't know
- 2.13 Where was treatment sought? .....1= No treatment; 2= Health facility; 3= TBA/CHW; 4= Self medication; 5= Traditional healer; 6= Faith healing; 7= others (Specify.....); 8= Not applicable
- 2.14 What was the outcome? ..... 1= recovered; 2= still sick on treatment; 3= still sick not on treatment; 4= others (Specify.....); 7= Not applicable
- 2.20 Have you experienced an unexplained weight loss in the past 3 months? ..... 1= Yes; 2= No
- 2.30 Have you experienced persistent diarrhea (Lasting more than 1 month) in the past 3 months? ..... 1= Yes; 2= No.
- 2.40 Do you use insecticide treated net (ITN)at night when you sleep? ..... 1=Yes; 2=No.
- 2.50 Are there water points near the school toilets? 1= Yes; 2= No
- 2.5.1. If yes, state how you use them.....
- 2.5.2. If no, state where students get water from for personal use.....
- 2.6.0. State why it is important to wash hands with running water .....
- 2.8.0. In your opinion, what would make one wash his/her hands.....
- 2.9.0. What challenges do you have in school that would stop you from washing your hands?.....

THANK YOU

Education. These will be selected as follows to give a total of 10 members for the FGD:

- School administration (PTA/BoM, School principal, Boarding Master/Mistress, Cateress)-----4 members
- Health sector (Public Health Officer, School health nurse)-----2 members
- NGOs (CARE, ACTION AID, SANA, Plan Int., etc)---- 2 members
- County Administration (Area chief or rep.)-----1 member
- Ministry of Education (Quality Assurance and Standards Officer)—1 member

a) *The Objective of the study*

To get better understanding of the thoughts, experiences, attitudes and perceptions of the group members and what they would prefer as a better school health intervention program to help them manage challenges and continue with provision of better health services for schools.

*Main thematic issues:* Groups' perception on skill-based education; communicable disease surveillance system; campaigns against sexually transmitted

APPENDIX II

Focus Group Discussion Guide

Focus group discussion is defined by Krueger and Casey (2000) as a special type of group in terms of purpose, size, composition and procedures. The purpose of conducting group discussion is to listen and gather information from different people. It helps to obtain a better understanding of how people feel issues, services or products. It enables individuals to recall facts that other group members have forgotten. Focus group discussion will be conducted with 8 – 12 quota sampled members to corroborate the data from the field. It will involve identification of thematic categories and coding them by repeatedly reading the transcripts. The major themes will finally be identified after all the categories are coded.

*Composition of the group:* Selection will be by quota sampling and the researcher will have a wide choice in the selection of the respondents from different cells to meet their quotas. The cells will include school administration, the health sector, Non-Governmental Organization, County administration and Ministry of

infections; medical checkups; school health policies; sanitation and hygiene practices; water quality; waste management; inspection procedures; isolation/quarantine measures; food safety and nutrition

1. What is your opinion on skill based education on prevention of endemic conditions as well as care of affected and infected? And what bothers you about it?
2. Do you collect data on daily disease incidences? What do you use the data for?
3. What do you do to reduce incidences of sexually transmitted infections and unplanned pregnancies? How do you support those infected and affected by the scourge?
4. What can students and other members of staff do in case of a health related incidence?
5. What possible solutions do you have for early detection and management of infectious diseases/outbreaks?
6. Who works in the sanatoria? What services do you provide here?
7. What kind of services do you promote and encourage to manage the environment and keep away insects and other vectors in order to reduce contacts with such organisms?
8. Who do you normally invite to carry out inspection on the health status of the school? How often do you do this? What would prompt you to carry out health inspection?
9. What do people in this school say about food storage and handling? What is your opinion on this?
10. What are your reasons for providing adequate and safe water to the school community? How would you ensure that water provided is safe? How often do you do this?
11. Would you say you have adequate latrines/or sanitation facilities in terms of official guidelines?
12. What would make you take measures such as isolation and quarantine to sick students? Which diseases would need such measures?
13. You represent one of the organizations that have health promotions programs in this area. Share with us your contribution towards promoting good health practices in this school. How do you assess your programs; would you say you have succeeded? Tell us more.
14. Provincial administration is key in the promotion of good health practices in the community. Share with us the programs you have to ensure the community is healthy. How do you rate the relationship between the community and the school in terms of resource sharing? What are the challenges you face in terms of communicable disease control?
15. In your opinion, based on the intervention programs we have discussed, rank them in order of best performing.
16. What are your future expectations?

*Wrap up:* Given your own experiences, what did I miss to ask you about health intervention programs in this school? Would you like to ask me anything?

*Note:* the order of questioning may change depending on who is being probed.

### APPENDIX III

#### An In-depth Interview Guide for Index Cases

*Note:* Index Cases are students with clinically confirmed illnesses of communicable diseases.

**I am interested in learning about some of the experiences you had before you became ill and how you have been coping since then. May be you could start by telling me about the environment where you spent most of your time in.**

1. Were there other students/people having the same ailment in that environment?
2. What would make you become ill? Please explain.
3. From what you have told me what would you say was the main reason why you became ill?
4. If you were in the same environment again what would you do differently? Tell me how this would stop you from becoming ill.
5. Give an approximation of bed spacing in the halls of residence. Use a 30cm ruler.
6. What do you remember about the teachings on how to protect yourself from such infections? Do you clean your hands with soap and running water after visiting a toilet?

**I would like to learn a little bit about what the school was like when you became ill.**

What kind of situations were in the school that contributed to your illness? Have the situations changed? Please explain.

7. Have you recovered/recovering from the ailment? Please explain.
8. What kinds of things did your parent/guardian/school do to assist you in recovery?
9. What are other students/school community say about the health and hygiene situation in the school? Explain.
10. In your opinion what would you want improved/put in place to reduce incidences of such diseases?
11. In your stay in this school, have you ever seen health inspectors in school doing inspection?
12. Given a chance, what would you do with the current situation in the school to reduce incidences of such diseases?

Thank you very much for your time and contribution.

APPENDIX IV

Observation checklist for schools

On a scale of 0-3, mark the extent to which the following public health interventions are observed during this period.

Intervention	Not observed score=0	Observed to a very limited extent score=1	Observed to some extent score=2	Observed to a high degree score=3
Ventilation in hostels				
Bed spacing in hostels				
Condition of hostel floor/walls				
ITNs use				
Desk spacing in classrooms				
Ventilation in classrooms				
Condition of classroom floor/walls				
Hand washing before eating				
Water only at handwashing area				
Water+soap at hand washing area				
Water+soap+disposable towels at handwashing area				
Condition of eating area floor/walls				
Kitchen staff hygiene				
Student-Toilet ratio				
Handwashing after defecation				
Solid waste disposal				
Liquid waste disposal				
Mosquito breeding control				
Safe water provision				



# GLOBAL JOURNALS INC. (US) GUIDELINES HANDBOOK 2015

---

[WWW.GLOBALJOURNALS.ORG](http://WWW.GLOBALJOURNALS.ORG)

# FELLOWS

## FELLOW OF ASSOCIATION OF RESEARCH SOCIETY IN MEDICAL (FARSM)

Global Journals Incorporate (USA) is accredited by Open Association of Research Society (OARS), U.S.A and in turn, awards “FARSM” title to individuals. The 'FARSM' title is accorded to a selected professional after the approval of the Editor-in-Chief/Editorial Board Members/Dean.



- The “FARSM” is a dignified title which is accorded to a person’s name viz. Dr. John E. Hall, Ph.D., FARSS or William Walldroff, M.S., FARSM.

FARSM accrediting is an honor. It authenticates your research activities. After recognition as FARSM, you can add 'FARSM' title with your name as you use this recognition as additional suffix to your status. This will definitely enhance and add more value and reputation to your name. You may use it on your professional Counseling Materials such as CV, Resume, and Visiting Card etc.

*The following benefits can be availed by you only for next three years from the date of certification:*



FARSM designated members are entitled to avail a 40% discount while publishing their research papers (of a single author) with Global Journals Incorporation (USA), if the same is accepted by Editorial Board/Peer Reviewers. If you are a main author or co-author in case of multiple authors, you will be entitled to avail discount of 10%.

Once FARSM title is accorded, the Fellow is authorized to organize a symposium/seminar/conference on behalf of Global Journal Incorporation (USA). The Fellow can also participate in conference/seminar/symposium organized by another institution as representative of Global Journal. In both the cases, it is mandatory for him to discuss with us and obtain our consent.



You may join as member of the Editorial Board of Global Journals Incorporation (USA) after successful completion of three years as Fellow and as Peer Reviewer. In addition, it is also desirable that you should organize seminar/symposium/conference at least once.

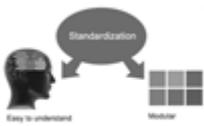
We shall provide you intimation regarding launching of e-version of journal of your stream time to time. This may be utilized in your library for the enrichment of knowledge of your students as well as it can also be helpful for the concerned faculty members.





The FARSM can go through standards of OARS. You can also play vital role if you have any suggestions so that proper amendment can take place to improve the same for the benefit of entire research community.

As FARSM, you will be given a renowned, secure and free professional email address with 100 GB of space e.g. [johnhall@globaljournals.org](mailto:johnhall@globaljournals.org). This will include Webmail, Spam Assassin, Email Forwarders, Auto-Responders, Email Delivery Route tracing, etc.



The FARSM will be eligible for a free application of standardization of their researches. Standardization of research will be subject to acceptability within stipulated norms as the next step after publishing in a journal. We shall depute a team of specialized research professionals who will render their services for elevating your researches to next higher level, which is worldwide open standardization.

The FARSM member can apply for grading and certification of standards of their educational and Institutional Degrees to Open Association of Research, Society U.S.A. Once you are designated as FARSM, you may send us a scanned copy of all of your credentials. OARS will verify, grade and certify them. This will be based on your academic records, quality of research papers published by you, and some more criteria. After certification of all your credentials by OARS, they will be published on your Fellow Profile link on website <https://associationofresearch.org> which will be helpful to upgrade the dignity.



The FARSM members can avail the benefits of free research podcasting in Global Research Radio with their research documents. After publishing the work, (including published elsewhere worldwide with proper authorization) you can upload your research paper with your recorded voice or you can utilize chargeable services of our professional RJs to record your paper in their voice on request.



The FARSM member also entitled to get the benefits of free research podcasting of their research documents through video clips. We can also streamline your conference videos and display your slides/ online slides and online research video clips at reasonable charges, on request.





The FARSM is eligible to earn from sales proceeds of his/her researches/reference/review Books or literature, while publishing with Global Journals. The FARSS can decide whether he/she would like to publish his/her research in a closed manner. In this case, whenever readers purchase that individual research paper for reading, maximum 60% of its profit earned as royalty by Global Journals, will be credited to his/her bank account. The entire entitled amount will be credited to his/her bank account exceeding limit of minimum fixed balance. There is no minimum time limit for collection. The FARSM member can decide its price and we can help in making the right decision.

The FARSM member is eligible to join as a paid peer reviewer at Global Journals Incorporation (USA) and can get remuneration of 15% of author fees, taken from the author of a respective paper. After reviewing 5 or more papers you can request to transfer the amount to your bank account.



## MEMBER OF ASSOCIATION OF RESEARCH SOCIETY IN MEDICAL (MARSM)

The ' MARSM ' title is accorded to a selected professional after the approval of the Editor-in-Chief / Editorial Board Members/Dean.

The “MARSM” is a dignified ornament which is accorded to a person’s name viz. Dr. John E. Hall, Ph.D., MARSM or William Walldroff, M.S., MARSM.



MARSM accrediting is an honor. It authenticates your research activities. After becoming MARSM, you can add 'MARSM' title with your name as you use this recognition as additional suffix to your status. This will definitely enhance and add more value and repute to your name. You may use it on your professional Counseling Materials such as CV, Resume, Visiting Card and Name Plate etc.

*The following benefits can be availed by you only for next three years from the date of certification.*



MARSM designated members are entitled to avail a 25% discount while publishing their research papers (of a single author) in Global Journals Inc., if the same is accepted by our Editorial Board and Peer Reviewers. If you are a main author or co-author of a group of authors, you will get discount of 10%.

As MARSM, you will be given a renowned, secure and free professional email address with 30 GB of space e.g. [johnhall@globaljournals.org](mailto:johnhall@globaljournals.org). This will include Webmail, Spam Assassin, Email Forwarders, Auto-Responders, Email Delivery Route tracing, etc.





We shall provide you intimation regarding launching of e-version of journal of your stream time to time. This may be utilized in your library for the enrichment of knowledge of your students as well as it can also be helpful for the concerned faculty members.



The MARSM member can apply for approval, grading and certification of standards of their educational and Institutional Degrees to Open Association of Research, Society U.S.A.



Once you are designated as MARSM, you may send us a scanned copy of all of your credentials. OARS will verify, grade and certify them. This will be based on your academic records, quality of research papers published by you, and some more criteria.

It is mandatory to read all terms and conditions carefully.



## AUXILIARY MEMBERSHIPS

### Institutional Fellow of Open Association of Research Society (USA) - OARS (USA)

Global Journals Incorporation (USA) is accredited by Open Association of Research Society, U.S.A (OARS) and in turn, affiliates research institutions as “Institutional Fellow of Open Association of Research Society” (IFOARS).



The “FARSC” is a dignified title which is accorded to a person’s name viz. Dr. John E. Hall, Ph.D., FARSC or William Walldroff, M.S., FARSC.

The IFOARS institution is entitled to form a Board comprised of one Chairperson and three to five board members preferably from different streams. The Board will be recognized as “Institutional Board of Open Association of Research Society”-(IBOARS).

*The Institute will be entitled to following benefits:*



The IBOARS can initially review research papers of their institute and recommend them to publish with respective journal of Global Journals. It can also review the papers of other institutions after obtaining our consent. The second review will be done by peer reviewer of Global Journals Incorporation (USA) The Board is at liberty to appoint a peer reviewer with the approval of chairperson after consulting us.

The author fees of such paper may be waived off up to 40%.

The Global Journals Incorporation (USA) at its discretion can also refer double blind peer reviewed paper at their end to the board for the verification and to get recommendation for final stage of acceptance of publication.



The IBOARS can organize symposium/seminar/conference in their country on behalf of Global Journals Incorporation (USA)-OARS (USA). The terms and conditions can be discussed separately.

The Board can also play vital role by exploring and giving valuable suggestions regarding the Standards of “Open Association of Research Society, U.S.A (OARS)” so that proper amendment can take place for the benefit of entire research community. We shall provide details of particular standard only on receipt of request from the Board.

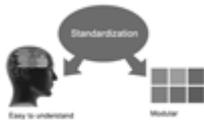


Journals Research  
inducing researches

The board members can also join us as Individual Fellow with 40% discount on total fees applicable to Individual Fellow. They will be entitled to avail all the benefits as declared. Please visit Individual Fellow-sub menu of GlobalJournals.org to have more relevant details.



We shall provide you intimation regarding launching of e-version of journal of your stream time to time. This may be utilized in your library for the enrichment of knowledge of your students as well as it can also be helpful for the concerned faculty members.



After nomination of your institution as “Institutional Fellow” and constantly functioning successfully for one year, we can consider giving recognition to your institute to function as Regional/Zonal office on our behalf. The board can also take up the additional allied activities for betterment after our consultation.

**The following entitlements are applicable to individual Fellows:**

Open Association of Research Society, U.S.A (OARS) By-laws states that an individual Fellow may use the designations as applicable, or the corresponding initials. The Credentials of individual Fellow and Associate designations signify that the individual has gained knowledge of the fundamental concepts. One is magnanimous and proficient in an expertise course covering the professional code of conduct, and follows recognized standards of practice.



Open Association of Research Society (US)/ Global Journals Incorporation (USA), as described in Corporate Statements, are educational, research publishing and professional membership organizations. Achieving our individual Fellow or Associate status is based mainly on meeting stated educational research requirements.

Disbursement of 40% Royalty earned through Global Journals : Researcher = 50%, Peer Reviewer = 37.50%, Institution = 12.50% E.g. Out of 40%, the 20% benefit should be passed on to researcher, 15 % benefit towards remuneration should be given to a reviewer and remaining 5% is to be retained by the institution.



We shall provide print version of 12 issues of any three journals [as per your requirement] out of our 38 journals worth \$ 2376 USD.

**Other:**

**The individual Fellow and Associate designations accredited by Open Association of Research Society (US) credentials signify guarantees following achievements:**

- The professional accredited with Fellow honor, is entitled to various benefits viz. name, fame, honor, regular flow of income, secured bright future, social status etc.



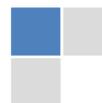
- In addition to above, if one is single author, then entitled to 40% discount on publishing research paper and can get 10% discount if one is co-author or main author among group of authors.
- The Fellow can organize symposium/seminar/conference on behalf of Global Journals Incorporation (USA) and he/she can also attend the same organized by other institutes on behalf of Global Journals.
- The Fellow can become member of Editorial Board Member after completing 3yrs.
- The Fellow can earn 60% of sales proceeds from the sale of reference/review books/literature/publishing of research paper.
- Fellow can also join as paid peer reviewer and earn 15% remuneration of author charges and can also get an opportunity to join as member of the Editorial Board of Global Journals Incorporation (USA)
- • This individual has learned the basic methods of applying those concepts and techniques to common challenging situations. This individual has further demonstrated an in-depth understanding of the application of suitable techniques to a particular area of research practice.

**Note :**

//

- In future, if the board feels the necessity to change any board member, the same can be done with the consent of the chairperson along with anyone board member without our approval.
- In case, the chairperson needs to be replaced then consent of 2/3rd board members are required and they are also required to jointly pass the resolution copy of which should be sent to us. In such case, it will be compulsory to obtain our approval before replacement.
- In case of “Difference of Opinion [if any]” among the Board members, our decision will be final and binding to everyone.

//



## PROCESS OF SUBMISSION OF RESEARCH PAPER

---

The Area or field of specialization may or may not be of any category as mentioned in 'Scope of Journal' menu of the GlobalJournals.org website. There are 37 Research Journal categorized with Six parental Journals GJCST, GJMR, GJRE, GJMBR, GJSFR, GJHSS. For Authors should prefer the mentioned categories. There are three widely used systems UDC, DDC and LCC. The details are available as 'Knowledge Abstract' at Home page. The major advantage of this coding is that, the research work will be exposed to and shared with all over the world as we are being abstracted and indexed worldwide.

The paper should be in proper format. The format can be downloaded from first page of 'Author Guideline' Menu. The Author is expected to follow the general rules as mentioned in this menu. The paper should be written in MS-Word Format (\*.DOC, \*.DOCX).

The Author can submit the paper either online or offline. The authors should prefer online submission. Online Submission: There are three ways to submit your paper:

**(A) (I) First, register yourself using top right corner of Home page then Login. If you are already registered, then login using your username and password.**

**(II) Choose corresponding Journal.**

**(III) Click 'Submit Manuscript'. Fill required information and Upload the paper.**

**(B) If you are using Internet Explorer, then Direct Submission through Homepage is also available.**

**(C) If these two are not convenient, and then email the paper directly to dean@globaljournals.org.**

Offline Submission: Author can send the typed form of paper by Post. However, online submission should be preferred.



# PREFERRED AUTHOR GUIDELINES

## MANUSCRIPT STYLE INSTRUCTION (Must be strictly followed)

Page Size: 8.27" X 11"

- Left Margin: 0.65
- Right Margin: 0.65
- Top Margin: 0.75
- Bottom Margin: 0.75
- Font type of all text should be Swis 721 Lt BT.
- Paper Title should be of Font Size 24 with one Column section.
- Author Name in Font Size of 11 with one column as of Title.
- Abstract Font size of 9 Bold, "Abstract" word in Italic Bold.
- Main Text: Font size 10 with justified two columns section
- Two Column with Equal Column with of 3.38 and Gaping of .2
- First Character must be three lines Drop capped.
- Paragraph before Spacing of 1 pt and After of 0 pt.
- Line Spacing of 1 pt
- Large Images must be in One Column
- Numbering of First Main Headings (Heading 1) must be in Roman Letters, Capital Letter, and Font Size of 10.
- Numbering of Second Main Headings (Heading 2) must be in Alphabets, Italic, and Font Size of 10.

**You can use your own standard format also.**

### Author Guidelines:

1. General,
2. Ethical Guidelines,
3. Submission of Manuscripts,
4. Manuscript's Category,
5. Structure and Format of Manuscript,
6. After Acceptance.

### 1. GENERAL

Before submitting your research paper, one is advised to go through the details as mentioned in following heads. It will be beneficial, while peer reviewer justify your paper for publication.

### Scope

The Global Journals Inc. (US) welcome the submission of original paper, review paper, survey article relevant to the all the streams of Philosophy and knowledge. The Global Journals Inc. (US) is parental platform for Global Journal of Computer Science and Technology, Researches in Engineering, Medical Research, Science Frontier Research, Human Social Science, Management, and Business organization. The choice of specific field can be done otherwise as following in Abstracting and Indexing Page on this Website. As the all Global

Journals Inc. (US) are being abstracted and indexed (in process) by most of the reputed organizations. Topics of only narrow interest will not be accepted unless they have wider potential or consequences.

## 2. ETHICAL GUIDELINES

Authors should follow the ethical guidelines as mentioned below for publication of research paper and research activities.

Papers are accepted on strict understanding that the material in whole or in part has not been, nor is being, considered for publication elsewhere. If the paper once accepted by Global Journals Inc. (US) and Editorial Board, will become the copyright of the Global Journals Inc. (US).

**Authorship: The authors and coauthors should have active contribution to conception design, analysis and interpretation of findings. They should critically review the contents and drafting of the paper. All should approve the final version of the paper before submission**

The Global Journals Inc. (US) follows the definition of authorship set up by the Global Academy of Research and Development. According to the Global Academy of R&D authorship, criteria must be based on:

- 1) Substantial contributions to conception and acquisition of data, analysis and interpretation of the findings.
- 2) Drafting the paper and revising it critically regarding important academic content.
- 3) Final approval of the version of the paper to be published.

All authors should have been credited according to their appropriate contribution in research activity and preparing paper. Contributors who do not match the criteria as authors may be mentioned under Acknowledgement.

Acknowledgements: Contributors to the research other than authors credited should be mentioned under acknowledgement. The specifications of the source of funding for the research if appropriate can be included. Suppliers of resources may be mentioned along with address.

**Appeal of Decision: The Editorial Board's decision on publication of the paper is final and cannot be appealed elsewhere.**

**Permissions: It is the author's responsibility to have prior permission if all or parts of earlier published illustrations are used in this paper.**

Please mention proper reference and appropriate acknowledgements wherever expected.

If all or parts of previously published illustrations are used, permission must be taken from the copyright holder concerned. It is the author's responsibility to take these in writing.

Approval for reproduction/modification of any information (including figures and tables) published elsewhere must be obtained by the authors/copyright holders before submission of the manuscript. Contributors (Authors) are responsible for any copyright fee involved.

## 3. SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be uploaded via this online submission page. The online submission is most efficient method for submission of papers, as it enables rapid distribution of manuscripts and consequently speeds up the review procedure. It also enables authors to know the status of their own manuscripts by emailing us. Complete instructions for submitting a paper is available below.

Manuscript submission is a systematic procedure and little preparation is required beyond having all parts of your manuscript in a given format and a computer with an Internet connection and a Web browser. Full help and instructions are provided on-screen. As an author, you will be prompted for login and manuscript details as Field of Paper and then to upload your manuscript file(s) according to the instructions.



To avoid postal delays, all transaction is preferred by e-mail. A finished manuscript submission is confirmed by e-mail immediately and your paper enters the editorial process with no postal delays. When a conclusion is made about the publication of your paper by our Editorial Board, revisions can be submitted online with the same procedure, with an occasion to view and respond to all comments.

Complete support for both authors and co-author is provided.

#### 4. MANUSCRIPT'S CATEGORY

Based on potential and nature, the manuscript can be categorized under the following heads:

Original research paper: Such papers are reports of high-level significant original research work.

Review papers: These are concise, significant but helpful and decisive topics for young researchers.

Research articles: These are handled with small investigation and applications

Research letters: The letters are small and concise comments on previously published matters.

#### 5. STRUCTURE AND FORMAT OF MANUSCRIPT

The recommended size of original research paper is less than seven thousand words, review papers fewer than seven thousands words also. Preparation of research paper or how to write research paper, are major hurdle, while writing manuscript. The research articles and research letters should be fewer than three thousand words, the structure original research paper; sometime review paper should be as follows:

**Papers:** These are reports of significant research (typically less than 7000 words equivalent, including tables, figures, references), and comprise:

(a) Title should be relevant and commensurate with the theme of the paper.

(b) A brief Summary, "Abstract" (less than 150 words) containing the major results and conclusions.

(c) Up to ten keywords, that precisely identifies the paper's subject, purpose, and focus.

(d) An Introduction, giving necessary background excluding subheadings; objectives must be clearly declared.

(e) Resources and techniques with sufficient complete experimental details (wherever possible by reference) to permit repetition; sources of information must be given and numerical methods must be specified by reference, unless non-standard.

(f) Results should be presented concisely, by well-designed tables and/or figures; the same data may not be used in both; suitable statistical data should be given. All data must be obtained with attention to numerical detail in the planning stage. As reproduced design has been recognized to be important to experiments for a considerable time, the Editor has decided that any paper that appears not to have adequate numerical treatments of the data will be returned un-refereed;

(g) Discussion should cover the implications and consequences, not just recapitulating the results; conclusions should be summarizing.

(h) Brief Acknowledgements.

(i) References in the proper form.

Authors should very cautiously consider the preparation of papers to ensure that they communicate efficiently. Papers are much more likely to be accepted, if they are cautiously designed and laid out, contain few or no errors, are summarizing, and be conventional to the approach and instructions. They will in addition, be published with much less delays than those that require much technical and editorial correction.



The Editorial Board reserves the right to make literary corrections and to make suggestions to improve brevity.

It is vital, that authors take care in submitting a manuscript that is written in simple language and adheres to published guidelines.

## Format

*Language: The language of publication is UK English. Authors, for whom English is a second language, must have their manuscript efficiently edited by an English-speaking person before submission to make sure that, the English is of high excellence. It is preferable, that manuscripts should be professionally edited.*

Standard Usage, Abbreviations, and Units: Spelling and hyphenation should be conventional to The Concise Oxford English Dictionary. Statistics and measurements should at all times be given in figures, e.g. 16 min, except for when the number begins a sentence. When the number does not refer to a unit of measurement it should be spelt in full unless, it is 160 or greater.

Abbreviations supposed to be used carefully. The abbreviated name or expression is supposed to be cited in full at first usage, followed by the conventional abbreviation in parentheses.

Metric SI units are supposed to generally be used excluding where they conflict with current practice or are confusing. For illustration, 1.4 l rather than  $1.4 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3$ , or 4 mm somewhat than  $4 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}$ . Chemical formula and solutions must identify the form used, e.g. anhydrous or hydrated, and the concentration must be in clearly defined units. Common species names should be followed by underlines at the first mention. For following use the generic name should be constricted to a single letter, if it is clear.

## Structure

All manuscripts submitted to Global Journals Inc. (US), ought to include:

Title: The title page must carry an instructive title that reflects the content, a running title (less than 45 characters together with spaces), names of the authors and co-authors, and the place(s) wherever the work was carried out. The full postal address in addition with the e-mail address of related author must be given. Up to eleven keywords or very brief phrases have to be given to help data retrieval, mining and indexing.

*Abstract, used in Original Papers and Reviews:*

### Optimizing Abstract for Search Engines

Many researchers searching for information online will use search engines such as Google, Yahoo or similar. By optimizing your paper for search engines, you will amplify the chance of someone finding it. This in turn will make it more likely to be viewed and/or cited in a further work. Global Journals Inc. (US) have compiled these guidelines to facilitate you to maximize the web-friendliness of the most public part of your paper.

### Key Words

A major linchpin in research work for the writing research paper is the keyword search, which one will employ to find both library and Internet resources.

One must be persistent and creative in using keywords. An effective keyword search requires a strategy and planning a list of possible keywords and phrases to try.

Search engines for most searches, use Boolean searching, which is somewhat different from Internet searches. The Boolean search uses "operators," words (and, or, not, and near) that enable you to expand or narrow your affords. Tips for research paper while preparing research paper are very helpful guideline of research paper.

Choice of key words is first tool of tips to write research paper. Research paper writing is an art. A few tips for deciding as strategically as possible about keyword search:



- One should start brainstorming lists of possible keywords before even begin searching. Think about the most important concepts related to research work. Ask, "What words would a source have to include to be truly valuable in research paper?" Then consider synonyms for the important words.
- It may take the discovery of only one relevant paper to let steer in the right keyword direction because in most databases, the keywords under which a research paper is abstracted are listed with the paper.
- One should avoid outdated words.

Keywords are the key that opens a door to research work sources. Keyword searching is an art in which researcher's skills are bound to improve with experience and time.

Numerical Methods: Numerical methods used should be clear and, where appropriate, supported by references.

*Acknowledgements: Please make these as concise as possible.*

#### References

References follow the Harvard scheme of referencing. References in the text should cite the authors' names followed by the time of their publication, unless there are three or more authors when simply the first author's name is quoted followed by et al. unpublished work has to only be cited where necessary, and only in the text. Copies of references in press in other journals have to be supplied with submitted typescripts. It is necessary that all citations and references be carefully checked before submission, as mistakes or omissions will cause delays.

References to information on the World Wide Web can be given, but only if the information is available without charge to readers on an official site. Wikipedia and Similar websites are not allowed where anyone can change the information. Authors will be asked to make available electronic copies of the cited information for inclusion on the Global Journals Inc. (US) homepage at the judgment of the Editorial Board.

The Editorial Board and Global Journals Inc. (US) recommend that, citation of online-published papers and other material should be done via a DOI (digital object identifier). If an author cites anything, which does not have a DOI, they run the risk of the cited material not being noticeable.

The Editorial Board and Global Journals Inc. (US) recommend the use of a tool such as Reference Manager for reference management and formatting.

#### Tables, Figures and Figure Legends

*Tables: Tables should be few in number, cautiously designed, uncrowned, and include only essential data. Each must have an Arabic number, e.g. Table 4, a self-explanatory caption and be on a separate sheet. Vertical lines should not be used.*

*Figures: Figures are supposed to be submitted as separate files. Always take in a citation in the text for each figure using Arabic numbers, e.g. Fig. 4. Artwork must be submitted online in electronic form by e-mailing them.*

#### Preparation of Electronic Figures for Publication

Even though low quality images are sufficient for review purposes, print publication requires high quality images to prevent the final product being blurred or fuzzy. Submit (or e-mail) EPS (line art) or TIFF (halftone/photographs) files only. MS PowerPoint and Word Graphics are unsuitable for printed pictures. Do not use pixel-oriented software. Scans (TIFF only) should have a resolution of at least 350 dpi (halftone) or 700 to 1100 dpi (line drawings) in relation to the imitation size. Please give the data for figures in black and white or submit a Color Work Agreement Form. EPS files must be saved with fonts embedded (and with a TIFF preview, if possible).

For scanned images, the scanning resolution (at final image size) ought to be as follows to ensure good reproduction: line art: >650 dpi; halftones (including gel photographs) : >350 dpi; figures containing both halftone and line images: >650 dpi.



Color Charges: It is the rule of the Global Journals Inc. (US) for authors to pay the full cost for the reproduction of their color artwork. Hence, please note that, if there is color artwork in your manuscript when it is accepted for publication, we would require you to complete and return a color work agreement form before your paper can be published.

*Figure Legends: Self-explanatory legends of all figures should be incorporated separately under the heading 'Legends to Figures'. In the full-text online edition of the journal, figure legends may possibly be truncated in abbreviated links to the full screen version. Therefore, the first 100 characters of any legend should notify the reader, about the key aspects of the figure.*

## **6. AFTER ACCEPTANCE**

Upon approval of a paper for publication, the manuscript will be forwarded to the dean, who is responsible for the publication of the Global Journals Inc. (US).

### **6.1 Proof Corrections**

The corresponding author will receive an e-mail alert containing a link to a website or will be attached. A working e-mail address must therefore be provided for the related author.

Acrobat Reader will be required in order to read this file. This software can be downloaded

(Free of charge) from the following website:

[www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html](http://www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html). This will facilitate the file to be opened, read on screen, and printed out in order for any corrections to be added. Further instructions will be sent with the proof.

Proofs must be returned to the dean at [dean@globaljournals.org](mailto:dean@globaljournals.org) within three days of receipt.

As changes to proofs are costly, we inquire that you only correct typesetting errors. All illustrations are retained by the publisher. Please note that the authors are responsible for all statements made in their work, including changes made by the copy editor.

### **6.2 Early View of Global Journals Inc. (US) (Publication Prior to Print)**

The Global Journals Inc. (US) are enclosed by our publishing's Early View service. Early View articles are complete full-text articles sent in advance of their publication. Early View articles are absolute and final. They have been completely reviewed, revised and edited for publication, and the authors' final corrections have been incorporated. Because they are in final form, no changes can be made after sending them. The nature of Early View articles means that they do not yet have volume, issue or page numbers, so Early View articles cannot be cited in the conventional way.

### **6.3 Author Services**

Online production tracking is available for your article through Author Services. Author Services enables authors to track their article - once it has been accepted - through the production process to publication online and in print. Authors can check the status of their articles online and choose to receive automated e-mails at key stages of production. The authors will receive an e-mail with a unique link that enables them to register and have their article automatically added to the system. Please ensure that a complete e-mail address is provided when submitting the manuscript.

### **6.4 Author Material Archive Policy**

Please note that if not specifically requested, publisher will dispose off hardcopy & electronic information submitted, after the two months of publication. If you require the return of any information submitted, please inform the Editorial Board or dean as soon as possible.

### **6.5 Offprint and Extra Copies**

A PDF offprint of the online-published article will be provided free of charge to the related author, and may be distributed according to the Publisher's terms and conditions. Additional paper offprint may be ordered by emailing us at: [editor@globaljournals.org](mailto:editor@globaljournals.org) .



Before start writing a good quality Computer Science Research Paper, let us first understand what is Computer Science Research Paper? So, Computer Science Research Paper is the paper which is written by professionals or scientists who are associated to Computer Science and Information Technology, or doing research study in these areas. If you are novel to this field then you can consult about this field from your supervisor or guide.

#### TECHNIQUES FOR WRITING A GOOD QUALITY RESEARCH PAPER:

**1. Choosing the topic:** In most cases, the topic is searched by the interest of author but it can be also suggested by the guides. You can have several topics and then you can judge that in which topic or subject you are finding yourself most comfortable. This can be done by asking several questions to yourself, like Will I be able to carry our search in this area? Will I find all necessary recourses to accomplish the search? Will I be able to find all information in this field area? If the answer of these types of questions will be "Yes" then you can choose that topic. In most of the cases, you may have to conduct the surveys and have to visit several places because this field is related to Computer Science and Information Technology. Also, you may have to do a lot of work to find all rise and falls regarding the various data of that subject. Sometimes, detailed information plays a vital role, instead of short information.

**2. Evaluators are human:** First thing to remember that evaluators are also human being. They are not only meant for rejecting a paper. They are here to evaluate your paper. So, present your Best.

**3. Think Like Evaluators:** If you are in a confusion or getting demotivated that your paper will be accepted by evaluators or not, then think and try to evaluate your paper like an Evaluator. Try to understand that what an evaluator wants in your research paper and automatically you will have your answer.

**4. Make blueprints of paper:** The outline is the plan or framework that will help you to arrange your thoughts. It will make your paper logical. But remember that all points of your outline must be related to the topic you have chosen.

**5. Ask your Guides:** If you are having any difficulty in your research, then do not hesitate to share your difficulty to your guide (if you have any). They will surely help you out and resolve your doubts. If you can't clarify what exactly you require for your work then ask the supervisor to help you with the alternative. He might also provide you the list of essential readings.

**6. Use of computer is recommended:** As you are doing research in the field of Computer Science, then this point is quite obvious.

**7. Use right software:** Always use good quality software packages. If you are not capable to judge good software then you can lose quality of your paper unknowingly. There are various software programs available to help you, which you can get through Internet.

**8. Use the Internet for help:** An excellent start for your paper can be by using the Google. It is an excellent search engine, where you can have your doubts resolved. You may also read some answers for the frequent question how to write my research paper or find model research paper. From the internet library you can download books. If you have all required books make important reading selecting and analyzing the specified information. Then put together research paper sketch out.

**9. Use and get big pictures:** Always use encyclopedias, Wikipedia to get pictures so that you can go into the depth.

**10. Bookmarks are useful:** When you read any book or magazine, you generally use bookmarks, right! It is a good habit, which helps to not to lose your continuity. You should always use bookmarks while searching on Internet also, which will make your search easier.

**11. Revise what you wrote:** When you write anything, always read it, summarize it and then finalize it.



**12. Make all efforts:** Make all efforts to mention what you are going to write in your paper. That means always have a good start. Try to mention everything in introduction, that what is the need of a particular research paper. Polish your work by good skill of writing and always give an evaluator, what he wants.

**13. Have backups:** When you are going to do any important thing like making research paper, you should always have backup copies of it either in your computer or in paper. This will help you to not to lose any of your important.

**14. Produce good diagrams of your own:** Always try to include good charts or diagrams in your paper to improve quality. Using several and unnecessary diagrams will degrade the quality of your paper by creating "hotchpotch." So always, try to make and include those diagrams, which are made by your own to improve readability and understandability of your paper.

**15. Use of direct quotes:** When you do research relevant to literature, history or current affairs then use of quotes become essential but if study is relevant to science then use of quotes is not preferable.

**16. Use proper verb tense:** Use proper verb tenses in your paper. Use past tense, to present those events that happened. Use present tense to indicate events that are going on. Use future tense to indicate future happening events. Use of improper and wrong tenses will confuse the evaluator. Avoid the sentences that are incomplete.

**17. Never use online paper:** If you are getting any paper on Internet, then never use it as your research paper because it might be possible that evaluator has already seen it or maybe it is outdated version.

**18. Pick a good study spot:** To do your research studies always try to pick a spot, which is quiet. Every spot is not for studies. Spot that suits you choose it and proceed further.

**19. Know what you know:** Always try to know, what you know by making objectives. Else, you will be confused and cannot achieve your target.

**20. Use good quality grammar:** Always use a good quality grammar and use words that will throw positive impact on evaluator. Use of good quality grammar does not mean to use tough words, that for each word the evaluator has to go through dictionary. Do not start sentence with a conjunction. Do not fragment sentences. Eliminate one-word sentences. Ignore passive voice. Do not ever use a big word when a diminutive one would suffice. Verbs have to be in agreement with their subjects. Prepositions are not expressions to finish sentences with. It is incorrect to ever divide an infinitive. Avoid clichés like the disease. Also, always shun irritating alliteration. Use language that is simple and straight forward. put together a neat summary.

**21. Arrangement of information:** Each section of the main body should start with an opening sentence and there should be a changeover at the end of the section. Give only valid and powerful arguments to your topic. You may also maintain your arguments with records.

**22. Never start in last minute:** Always start at right time and give enough time to research work. Leaving everything to the last minute will degrade your paper and spoil your work.

**23. Multitasking in research is not good:** Doing several things at the same time proves bad habit in case of research activity. Research is an area, where everything has a particular time slot. Divide your research work in parts and do particular part in particular time slot.

**24. Never copy others' work:** Never copy others' work and give it your name because if evaluator has seen it anywhere you will be in trouble.

**25. Take proper rest and food:** No matter how many hours you spend for your research activity, if you are not taking care of your health then all your efforts will be in vain. For a quality research, study is must, and this can be done by taking proper rest and food.

**26. Go for seminars:** Attend seminars if the topic is relevant to your research area. Utilize all your resources.



**27. Refresh your mind after intervals:** Try to give rest to your mind by listening to soft music or by sleeping in intervals. This will also improve your memory.

**28. Make colleagues:** Always try to make colleagues. No matter how sharper or intelligent you are, if you make colleagues you can have several ideas, which will be helpful for your research.

**29. Think technically:** Always think technically. If anything happens, then search its reasons, its benefits, and demerits.

**30. Think and then print:** When you will go to print your paper, notice that tables are not be split, headings are not detached from their descriptions, and page sequence is maintained.

**31. Adding unnecessary information:** Do not add unnecessary information, like, I have used MS Excel to draw graph. Do not add irrelevant and inappropriate material. These all will create superfluous. Foreign terminology and phrases are not apropos. One should NEVER take a broad view. Analogy in script is like feathers on a snake. Not at all use a large word when a very small one would be sufficient. Use words properly, regardless of how others use them. Remove quotations. Puns are for kids, not grunt readers. Amplification is a billion times of inferior quality than sarcasm.

**32. Never oversimplify everything:** To add material in your research paper, never go for oversimplification. This will definitely irritate the evaluator. Be more or less specific. Also too, by no means, ever use rhythmic redundancies. Contractions aren't essential and shouldn't be there used. Comparisons are as terrible as clichés. Give up ampersands and abbreviations, and so on. Remove commas, that are, not necessary. Parenthetical words however should be together with this in commas. Understatement is all the time the complete best way to put onward earth-shaking thoughts. Give a detailed literary review.

**33. Report concluded results:** Use concluded results. From raw data, filter the results and then conclude your studies based on measurements and observations taken. Significant figures and appropriate number of decimal places should be used. Parenthetical remarks are prohibitive. Proofread carefully at final stage. In the end give outline to your arguments. Spot out perspectives of further study of this subject. Justify your conclusion by at the bottom of them with sufficient justifications and examples.

**34. After conclusion:** Once you have concluded your research, the next most important step is to present your findings. Presentation is extremely important as it is the definite medium through which your research is going to be in print to the rest of the crowd. Care should be taken to categorize your thoughts well and present them in a logical and neat manner. A good quality research paper format is essential because it serves to highlight your research paper and bring to light all necessary aspects in your research.

## INFORMAL GUIDELINES OF RESEARCH PAPER WRITING

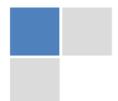
### Key points to remember:

- Submit all work in its final form.
- Write your paper in the form, which is presented in the guidelines using the template.
- Please note the criterion for grading the final paper by peer-reviewers.

### Final Points:

A purpose of organizing a research paper is to let people to interpret your effort selectively. The journal requires the following sections, submitted in the order listed, each section to start on a new page.

The introduction will be compiled from reference matter and will reflect the design processes or outline of basis that direct you to make study. As you will carry out the process of study, the method and process section will be constructed as like that. The result segment will show related statistics in nearly sequential order and will direct the reviewers next to the similar intellectual paths throughout the data that you took to carry out your study. The discussion section will provide understanding of the data and projections as to the implication of the results. The use of good quality references all through the paper will give the effort trustworthiness by representing an alertness of prior workings.



Writing a research paper is not an easy job no matter how trouble-free the actual research or concept. Practice, excellent preparation, and controlled record keeping are the only means to make straightforward the progression.

### **General style:**

Specific editorial column necessities for compliance of a manuscript will always take over from directions in these general guidelines.

To make a paper clear

- Adhere to recommended page limits

Mistakes to evade

- Insertion a title at the foot of a page with the subsequent text on the next page
- Separating a table/chart or figure - impound each figure/table to a single page
- Submitting a manuscript with pages out of sequence

In every sections of your document

- Use standard writing style including articles ("a", "the," etc.)
- Keep on paying attention on the research topic of the paper
- Use paragraphs to split each significant point (excluding for the abstract)
- Align the primary line of each section
- Present your points in sound order
- Use present tense to report well accepted
- Use past tense to describe specific results
- Shun familiar wording, don't address the reviewer directly, and don't use slang, slang language, or superlatives
- Shun use of extra pictures - include only those figures essential to presenting results

### **Title Page:**

Choose a revealing title. It should be short. It should not have non-standard acronyms or abbreviations. It should not exceed two printed lines. It should include the name(s) and address (es) of all authors.



## Abstract:

The summary should be two hundred words or less. It should briefly and clearly explain the key findings reported in the manuscript-- must have precise statistics. It should not have abnormal acronyms or abbreviations. It should be logical in itself. Shun citing references at this point.

An abstract is a brief distinct paragraph summary of finished work or work in development. In a minute or less a reviewer can be taught the foundation behind the study, common approach to the problem, relevant results, and significant conclusions or new questions.

Write your summary when your paper is completed because how can you write the summary of anything which is not yet written? Wealth of terminology is very essential in abstract. Yet, use comprehensive sentences and do not let go readability for brevity. You can maintain it succinct by phrasing sentences so that they provide more than lone rationale. The author can at this moment go straight to shortening the outcome. Sum up the study, with the subsequent elements in any summary. Try to maintain the initial two items to no more than one ruling each.

- Reason of the study - theory, overall issue, purpose
- Fundamental goal
- To the point depiction of the research
- Consequences, including definite statistics - if the consequences are quantitative in nature, account quantitative data; results of any numerical analysis should be reported
- Significant conclusions or questions that track from the research(es)

## Approach:

- Single section, and succinct
- As an outline of job done, it is always written in past tense
- A conceptual should situate on its own, and not submit to any other part of the paper such as a form or table
- Center on shortening results - bound background information to a verdict or two, if completely necessary
- What you account in an abstract must be regular with what you reported in the manuscript
- Exact spelling, clearness of sentences and phrases, and appropriate reporting of quantities (proper units, important statistics) are just as significant in an abstract as they are anywhere else

## Introduction:

The **Introduction** should "introduce" the manuscript. The reviewer should be presented with sufficient background information to be capable to comprehend and calculate the purpose of your study without having to submit to other works. The basis for the study should be offered. Give most important references but shun difficult to make a comprehensive appraisal of the topic. In the introduction, describe the problem visibly. If the problem is not acknowledged in a logical, reasonable way, the reviewer will have no attention in your result. Speak in common terms about techniques used to explain the problem, if needed, but do not present any particulars about the protocols here. Following approach can create a valuable beginning:

- Explain the value (significance) of the study
- Shield the model - why did you employ this particular system or method? What is its compensation? You strength remark on its appropriateness from a abstract point of vision as well as point out sensible reasons for using it.
- Present a justification. Status your particular theory (es) or aim(s), and describe the logic that led you to choose them.
- Very for a short time explain the tentative propose and how it skilled the declared objectives.

## Approach:

- Use past tense except for when referring to recognized facts. After all, the manuscript will be submitted after the entire job is done.
- Sort out your thoughts; manufacture one key point with every section. If you make the four points listed above, you will need a least of four paragraphs.



- Present surroundings information only as desirable in order hold up a situation. The reviewer does not desire to read the whole thing you know about a topic.
- Shape the theory/purpose specifically - do not take a broad view.
- As always, give awareness to spelling, simplicity and correctness of sentences and phrases.

#### **Procedures (Methods and Materials):**

This part is supposed to be the easiest to carve if you have good skills. A sound written Procedures segment allows a capable scientist to replacement your results. Present precise information about your supplies. The suppliers and clarity of reagents can be helpful bits of information. Present methods in sequential order but linked methodologies can be grouped as a segment. Be concise when relating the protocols. Attempt for the least amount of information that would permit another capable scientist to spare your outcome but be cautious that vital information is integrated. The use of subheadings is suggested and ought to be synchronized with the results section. When a technique is used that has been well described in another object, mention the specific item describing a way but draw the basic principle while stating the situation. The purpose is to text all particular resources and broad procedures, so that another person may use some or all of the methods in one more study or referee the scientific value of your work. It is not to be a step by step report of the whole thing you did, nor is a methods section a set of orders.

#### **Materials:**

- Explain materials individually only if the study is so complex that it saves liberty this way.
- Embrace particular materials, and any tools or provisions that are not frequently found in laboratories.
- Do not take in frequently found.
- If use of a definite type of tools.
- Materials may be reported in a part section or else they may be recognized along with your measures.

#### **Methods:**

- Report the method (not particulars of each process that engaged the same methodology)
- Describe the method entirely
- To be succinct, present methods under headings dedicated to specific dealings or groups of measures
- Simplify - details how procedures were completed not how they were exclusively performed on a particular day.
- If well known procedures were used, account the procedure by name, possibly with reference, and that's all.

#### **Approach:**

- It is embarrassed or not possible to use vigorous voice when documenting methods with no using first person, which would focus the reviewer's interest on the researcher rather than the job. As a result when script up the methods most authors use third person passive voice.
- Use standard style in this and in every other part of the paper - avoid familiar lists, and use full sentences.

#### **What to keep away from**

- Resources and methods are not a set of information.
- Skip all descriptive information and surroundings - save it for the argument.
- Leave out information that is immaterial to a third party.

#### **Results:**

The principle of a results segment is to present and demonstrate your conclusion. Create this part a entirely objective details of the outcome, and save all understanding for the discussion.

The page length of this segment is set by the sum and types of data to be reported. Carry on to be to the point, by means of statistics and tables, if suitable, to present consequences most efficiently. You must obviously differentiate material that would usually be incorporated in a study editorial from any unprocessed data or additional appendix matter that would not be available. In fact, such matter should not be submitted at all except requested by the instructor.



## Content

- Sum up your conclusion in text and demonstrate them, if suitable, with figures and tables.
- In manuscript, explain each of your consequences, point the reader to remarks that are most appropriate.
- Present a background, such as by describing the question that was addressed by creation an exacting study.
- Explain results of control experiments and comprise remarks that are not accessible in a prescribed figure or table, if appropriate.
- Examine your data, then prepare the analyzed (transformed) data in the form of a figure (graph), table, or in manuscript form.

### What to stay away from

- Do not discuss or infer your outcome, report surroundings information, or try to explain anything.
- Not at all, take in raw data or intermediate calculations in a research manuscript.
- Do not present the similar data more than once.
- Manuscript should complement any figures or tables, not duplicate the identical information.
- Never confuse figures with tables - there is a difference.

### Approach

- As forever, use past tense when you submit to your results, and put the whole thing in a reasonable order.
- Put figures and tables, appropriately numbered, in order at the end of the report
- If you desire, you may place your figures and tables properly within the text of your results part.

### Figures and tables

- If you put figures and tables at the end of the details, make certain that they are visibly distinguished from any attach appendix materials, such as raw facts
- Despite of position, each figure must be numbered one after the other and complete with subtitle
- In spite of position, each table must be titled, numbered one after the other and complete with heading
- All figure and table must be adequately complete that it could situate on its own, divide from text

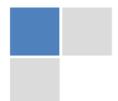
### Discussion:

The Discussion is expected the trickiest segment to write and describe. A lot of papers submitted for journal are discarded based on problems with the Discussion. There is no head of state for how long a argument should be. Position your understanding of the outcome visibly to lead the reviewer through your conclusions, and then finish the paper with a summing up of the implication of the study. The purpose here is to offer an understanding of your results and hold up for all of your conclusions, using facts from your research and generally accepted information, if suitable. The implication of result should be visibly described. Infer your data in the conversation in suitable depth. This means that when you clarify an observable fact you must explain mechanisms that may account for the observation. If your results vary from your prospect, make clear why that may have happened. If your results agree, then explain the theory that the proof supported. It is never suitable to just state that the data approved with prospect, and let it drop at that.

- Make a decision if each premise is supported, discarded, or if you cannot make a conclusion with assurance. Do not just dismiss a study or part of a study as "uncertain."
- Research papers are not acknowledged if the work is imperfect. Draw what conclusions you can based upon the results that you have, and take care of the study as a finished work
- You may propose future guidelines, such as how the experiment might be personalized to accomplish a new idea.
- Give details all of your remarks as much as possible, focus on mechanisms.
- Make a decision if the tentative design sufficiently addressed the theory, and whether or not it was correctly restricted.
- Try to present substitute explanations if sensible alternatives be present.
- One research will not counter an overall question, so maintain the large picture in mind, where do you go next? The best studies unlock new avenues of study. What questions remain?
- Recommendations for detailed papers will offer supplementary suggestions.

### Approach:

- When you refer to information, differentiate data generated by your own studies from available information
- Submit to work done by specific persons (including you) in past tense.
- Submit to generally acknowledged facts and main beliefs in present tense.



## THE ADMINISTRATION RULES

Please carefully note down following rules and regulation before submitting your Research Paper to Global Journals Inc. (US):

**Segment Draft and Final Research Paper:** You have to strictly follow the template of research paper. If it is not done your paper may get rejected.

- The **major constraint** is that you must independently make all content, tables, graphs, and facts that are offered in the paper. You must write each part of the paper wholly on your own. The Peer-reviewers need to identify your own perceptives of the concepts in your own terms. NEVER extract straight from any foundation, and never rephrase someone else's analysis.
- Do not give permission to anyone else to "PROOFREAD" your manuscript.
- **Methods to avoid Plagiarism is applied by us on every paper, if found guilty, you will be blacklisted by all of our collaborated research groups, your institution will be informed for this and strict legal actions will be taken immediately.)**
- To guard yourself and others from possible illegal use please do not permit anyone right to use to your paper and files.



CRITERION FOR GRADING A RESEARCH PAPER (COMPILATION)  
BY GLOBAL JOURNALS INC. (US)

Please note that following table is only a Grading of "Paper Compilation" and not on "Performed/Stated Research" whose grading solely depends on Individual Assigned Peer Reviewer and Editorial Board Member. These can be available only on request and after decision of Paper. This report will be the property of Global Journals Inc. (US).

Topics	Grades		
	A-B	C-D	E-F
<i>Abstract</i>	Clear and concise with appropriate content, Correct format. 200 words or below	Unclear summary and no specific data, Incorrect form  Above 200 words	No specific data with ambiguous information  Above 250 words
<i>Introduction</i>	Containing all background details with clear goal and appropriate details, flow specification, no grammar and spelling mistake, well organized sentence and paragraph, reference cited	Unclear and confusing data, appropriate format, grammar and spelling errors with unorganized matter	Out of place depth and content, hazy format
<i>Methods and Procedures</i>	Clear and to the point with well arranged paragraph, precision and accuracy of facts and figures, well organized subheads	Difficult to comprehend with embarrassed text, too much explanation but completed	Incorrect and unorganized structure with hazy meaning
<i>Result</i>	Well organized, Clear and specific, Correct units with precision, correct data, well structuring of paragraph, no grammar and spelling mistake	Complete and embarrassed text, difficult to comprehend	Irregular format with wrong facts and figures
<i>Discussion</i>	Well organized, meaningful specification, sound conclusion, logical and concise explanation, highly structured paragraph reference cited	Wordy, unclear conclusion, spurious	Conclusion is not cited, unorganized, difficult to comprehend
<i>References</i>	Complete and correct format, well organized	Beside the point, Incomplete	Wrong format and structuring



# INDEX

---

---

## **A**

Adenocarcinoma · 28, 29, 31

---

## **C**

Cardiomegaly · 11  
Cavitary · 27  
Cholesteryl · 4, 6, 40, 44

---

## **E**

Entamoeba · 52  
Epimenohrea · 25, 27  
Euthyroid · 11  
Exogenous · 11, 37

---

## **G**

Glucocorticoids · 35, 40

---

## **L**

Lengeler · 66, 94, 124

---

## **M**

Microalbuminuria · 1, 35, 36

---

## **N**

Normochromic · 11  
Norwalkvirus · 52  
Nyabondo · 102

---

## **O**

Ouldabdallahi · 92

---

## **P**

Papilloma · 26  
Parasitaemia · 66, 92, 126  
Plurimetabolic · 36

---

## **R**

Reabsorption · 4  
Rodrigues · 54, 128

---

## **S**

Schistosomiasis · 47, 73, 122  
Squamous · 25, 27

---

## **V**

Vasodilatory · 4



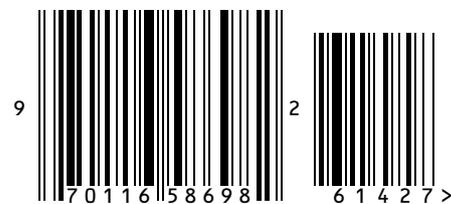
save our planet



# Global Journal of Medical Research

Visit us on the Web at [www.GlobalJournals.org](http://www.GlobalJournals.org) | [www.MedicalResearchJournal.org](http://www.MedicalResearchJournal.org)  
or email us at [helpdesk@globaljournals.org](mailto:helpdesk@globaljournals.org)

ISSN 9755896



© Global Journals